

2026

أشهر وأحب كتب تعليمية ، وأوسعها انتشاراً

Selah El-Telmeez

Since 1960



6

Sixth Primary
Second Term



English



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية للمحتوى التعليمي الخاص
بكتاب الوزارة محفوظة لوزارة التربية والتعليم العالي



(A) Listening

2 Marks

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2 Marks

A listening text of about **SEVENTY (70)** words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **SIX** followed by **FOUR (4)** sentences is provided. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Learners are asked to listen to the text and write (T) True or (F) False.

Half a mark each

(B) Reading

11 Marks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2 Marks

FOUR (4) MCQs (2 vocabulary and 2 structure) based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

Half a mark each

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2 Marks

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

Half a mark each

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7 Marks

An unseen literary or informational text from **NINETY (90)** to **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **SIX**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO (2)** MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options each

Half a mark each

B. **THREE (3)** open-ended questions

2 marks each

The questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(C) Writing 17 Marks

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4 Marks

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

2 marks each

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2 Marks

TWO (2) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences.

One mark each

7 Punctuate the following:

4 Marks

TWO (2) simple statements (a sentence and a question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark, Comma). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

2 marks each

8 Write a text of **SIXTY (60)** words using the words below:

7 Marks

Learners are asked to write not less than **SIXTY (60)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, tables.... etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:
Informal email/paragraph/story/biography.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary – One mark for grammar – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation)



Sixth Year Primary

قطاع المعاهد الأزهرية
المواصفة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائي 2026/2025

(A) Language Functions 10 Marks

1 Read and complete the dialog:

Six words are given to complete a simple dialog. Pupils are asked to read and complete five missing parts using five of the given words.

Two marks each

(B) Vocabulary and Structures 20 Marks

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

10 Marks

Five sentences are given. Pupils are asked to read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

Two marks each

3 Choose the correct answer:

10 Marks

Ten multiple-choice items (five for vocabulary and five for grammar) are given. Pupils are asked to choose the correct answer.

One mark each

(C) Reading Comprehension 20 Marks

4 Read and circle the odd one out:

10 Marks

Five groups of words are given. Pupils are asked to circle the odd one out of each group and replace it with the correct one.

Two marks each

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10 Marks

A text is given. Pupils are asked to read it and answer the questions. (Three true or false questions and two multiple-choice questions).

Two marks each

(D) Writing 10 Marks

6 Write a short paragraph/story/an e-mail:

10 Marks

Pupils are asked to write a paragraph or an e-mail of five sentences based on the material in the set book. Five key words are given and pupils are asked to use them to write the sentences.

Two marks each sentence

سلاح التلميذ



تطبيق
سلاح التلميذ

اشترك
الآن



لولي الأمر

للطالب

للمعلم



www.selahelteimeez.com

Contents

1 Unit

Celebrating Creativity

Lesson 1: A Visit to the Art Gallery	11
Reading	14
Lesson 1: Homework	16
Lesson 2: What's in the Frame?	17
Language	20
Lesson 2: Homework	22
Lesson 3 (A): An Egyptian Masterpiece	23
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	26
Lesson 3: Homework	28
Lessons 4&5: Writing Like an Artist/Think and Create	29
Unit (1) Review	34
Reading & Conversation in Points	35
Dictation	36
Conjugation of Verbs	37
Writing Station	38
Important Paragraphs	39
Student's Book Activities	40
Test on unit (1)	41
Al-Azhar Test on unit (1)	44

2 Unit

Wonderful Inventions

Lesson 1: The Brilliant Engineer	48
Conversation	50
Lesson 1: Homework	52
Lesson 2: The Egyptian Loom	53
Language	56
Lesson 2: Homework	58
Lesson 3 (A): The Story of the First Clock	59
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	62
Lesson 3: Homework	64
Lessons 4&5: A Visit to Aswan Dam/Think and Create	65
Unit (2) Review	69
Reading & Conversation in Points	70
Dictation	71
Conjugation of Verbs	72
Writing Station	73
Important Paragraphs	74
Student's Book Activities	75
Test on unit (2)	76
Al-Azhar Test on unit (2)	79

3 Unit

Hidden Gems of Egypt

Lesson 1: The Enchanting Tuna el-Gebel	83
Reading	85
Lesson 1: Homework	87
Lesson 2: The Temple of Dakka	88
Language	92
Lesson 2: Homework	95
Lesson 3 (A): Discovering Deir el-Medina	96
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	100
Lesson 3: Homework	101
Lessons 4&5: The Valley of the Whales (Wadi El-Hitan)/Think and Create	102
Unit (3) Review	108
Reading & Conversation in Points	109
Dictation	110
Conjugation of Verbs	111
Writing Station	112
Important Paragraphs	113
Student's Book Activities	114
Test on unit (3)	115
Al-Azhar Test on unit (3)	118

Review 1

	Page
Vocabulary Summary	121
Language Summary	122
Review (1) Test (1)	124
Review (1) Test (2)	127
Review (1) Test (3)	130

4

Unit

Egypt on the Move

Lesson 1: Egypt's New Landscape	134
Reading	137
Lesson 1: Homework	139
Lesson 2: Building Egypt's Modern Economy	140
Language	144
Lesson 2: Homework	146
Lesson 3 (A): Egypt Past and Present	147
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	149
Lesson 3: Homework	150
Lessons 4&5: Egypt Inside Out/Think and Create	151
Unit (4) Review	155
Reading in Points	156
Dictation	157
Conjugation of Verbs	158
Writing Station	159
Important Paragraphs	160
Student's Book Activities	161
Test on unit (4)	162
Al-Azhar Test on unit (4)	165

5

Unit

Safe and Smart Transportation for Egypt's Future

Lesson 1: Next Stop, Giza	169
Reading	171
Lesson 1: Homework	173
Lesson 2: Egypt's New Monorail	174
Language	178
Lesson 2: Homework	180
Lesson 3 (A): Cleaner Transportation, Cleaner Planet	181
Lesson 3 (B): Pronunciation	185
Lesson 3: Homework	186
Lessons 4&5: Smart and Green Transportation/Think and Create	187
Unit (5) Review	192
Reading in Points	193
Dictation	194
Conjugation of Verbs	195
Writing Station	196
Important Paragraphs	197
Student's Book Activities	198
Test on unit (5)	199
Al-Azhar Test on unit (5)	202

6

Unit

The Library That Time Forgot

Story Elements	206
Story Vocabulary	209
Story Scenes	213
Story Practice	218
Student's Book Activities	222
Test on unit (6)	223

Review 2

Vocabulary Summary	226
Language Summary	227
Review (2) Test (1)	228
Review (2) Test (2)	231
Review (2) Test (3)	234

Final Tests

237

Listening Scripts

268

1 Unit

Celebrating Creativity

Learning Outcomes نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Discuss and share thoughts about art, artists, and museums
- Use art-related vocabulary to describe ideas for an art studio and different types of art
- Express and justify opinions clearly when talking about artwork and creativity

• مناقشة ومشاركة أفكار عن الفن، الفنانين، والمتاحف

• استخدام مفردات متعلقة بالفن لوصف الأفكار الخاصة باستوديو الفن وأنواع الفن المختلفة

• التعبير عن آراء وتبريرها بوضوح عند التحدث عن العمل الفني والإبداع

Listening

- Understand the main ideas and specific details in short spoken texts about art
- Answer questions based on short listening passages about artists or art studios
- Count the number of syllables in spoken words and identify two- and three-syllable words

• فهم الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل المحددة في نصوص منطوقة قصيرة عن الفن

• الإجابة عن أسئلة مستندة على مقاطع استماع قصيرة عن فنانين أو استوديوهات فنية

• حساب عدد مقاطع صوتية في كلمات منطوقة وتحديد كلمات مكونة من مقطعين وثلاثة مقاطع صوتية

Reading

- Read and understand short texts about art galleries, art studios, and famous artists
- Identify and define key vocabulary words related to art and creativity
- Extract specific information from a text to answer comprehension questions
- Analyze a short dialog and arrange events in the correct order

• قراءة وفهم نصوص قصيرة عن معارض، استوديوهات فنية، وفنانين مشهورين

• تحديد وتعريف مفردات أساسية متعلقة بالفن والإبداع

• استخلاص معلومات محددة من نص للإجابة عن أسئلة فهم

• تحليل محادثة قصيرة وترتيب أحداث بالتسلسل الصحيح

Writing

- Write sentences correctly using new art-related vocabulary
- Use conjunction pairs (both...and, either...or, neither...nor) accurately in sentences
- Write a short paragraph about creating an artwork, describing the process and inspiration
- Design a poster about a famous place in Egypt

• كتابة جمل صحيحة باستخدام مفردات جديدة متعلقة بالفن

• استخدام أدوات العطف المزدوجة (both...and, either...or, neither...nor) بدقة في جمل

• كتابة فقرة قصيرة عن إنشاء عمل فني، مع وصف العملية والإلهام

• تصميم ملصق عن مكان مشهور في مصر

Lesson

1

A Visit to the Art Gallery

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Play Audio

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



whisper

تهمس



canvas

قماش الرسم



paintbrush

فرشاة الرسم



carve

ينحت



sculpture

منحوتة



palette

لوحة الألوان



masterpiece

تحفة فنية



art gallery

معرض فني

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

artist	فنان	family	عائلة	first	أولاً
mural	لوحة جدارية	paintings	لوحات	room	حجرة/غرفة
pottery	خزف/فخار	statue	تمثال	wall	حائط

Adjectives

الصفات

young	صغير السن	excited	متحمّس	huge	ضخم
beautiful	جميل	giant	عملاق/ضخم	wooden	خشبي
strong	قوي	powerful	قوي/عظيم	strange	غريب
colorful	ملوّن	bright	برّاق/زاهٍ	inspired	مُلهم



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wish يتمنى	wished	wished
look يبدو	looked	looked
love يحب	loved	loved
start يبدأ	started	started

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
know يعرف	knew	known
draw يرسم	drew	drawn
take يأخذ	took	taken
feel يشعر	felt	felt

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

look at ينظر إلى	right now الآن
walked into دخل إلى	pointed to أشار إلى
go home يذهب للمنزل	right away على الفور/في الحال
couldn't wait to لم يستطع الانتظار لـ	used to اعتاد على



Note

- We use "I wish I ..." to talk about something we don't have now, but we want it.
- نستخدم عبارة "I wish I ..." بمعنى «أتمنى لو ...» للتحدث عن شيء لا نملكه الآن، ولكننا نريده.

Ex:

- "I wish I had my paintbrush."
- = I don't have my paintbrush now, but I want it.



Definitions

تعريفات

whisper	يهمس	to speak quietly so only one or two people could hear أن يتحدث بهدوء بحيث لا يسمعه سوى شخص أو شخصين
canvas	قماش الرسم	the surface (often cloth) an artist paints on السطح (غالبًا قماش) الذي يرسم عليه الفنان
paintbrush	فرشاة الرسم	a soft tool used by artists to put paint on a picture أداة ناعمة يستخدمها الفنانون لوضع طلاء على صورة
palette	لوحة الألوان	a flat board artists use to mix colors لوحة مسطحة يستخدمها الفنانون لمزج الألوان
carve	ينحت	to cut or shape wood or stone to make art أن يقطع ويشكل الخشب أو الحجر لصنع فن
sculpture	منحوتة	a piece of art made by shaping stone, wood, or metal قطعة فنية مصنوعة عن طريق تشكيل الحجر، الخشب، أو المعدن
masterpiece	تحفة فنية	a beautiful piece of art made with great skill قطعة فنية جميلة مصنوعة بمهارة فائقة

(Reading) main points

النقاط الأساسية في فقرة القراءة

- Lily, a young artist, went with her family to a big art gallery.
ليلى، فنانة صغيرة السن، ذهبت مع عائلتها إلى معرض فني كبير.
- She admired huge paintings on a canvas and wished she had her paintbrush and palette.
أعجبت بلوحات ضخمة على قماش الرسم وتمنت لو كان معها فرشاة الرسم الخاصة بها ولوحة الألوان.
- They also saw pottery, a giant wooden statue, and a colorful sculpture.
رأوا أيضًا خزفًا، تمثالًا خشبيًا ضخمًا، ومنحوتة ملونة.
- Lily also loved a bright mural on the wall.
أحبّت ليلى كذلك لوحة جدارية برّاقة على الحائط.
- Her mom showed her a very old painting, which was a masterpiece.
أرّتها أمها لوحة فنية قديمة جدًا، والتي كانت تحفة فنية.
- Lily was inspired by everything and wanted to start her own masterpiece.
كانت ليلى مُلهمة بكل شيء وأرادت أن تبدأ في تحفتها الفنية الخاصة.



Play Audio

استمع، انظر واقرأ:

Listen, look, and read:

S B page 8

You know, Lily was a young artist who loved to draw. So, one Saturday, her family took her to, uh, a big art gallery. Oh, she was so excited!

"Wow," she whispered. "Look at that!"

First, she saw these huge paintings on a canvas. "Mmm," she said, "I wish I had my paintbrush and palette with me right now!" Then, they walked into a room with beautiful pottery and a giant wooden statue that an artist used to carve. It looked so strong and powerful!

Lily also loved a strange, colorful sculpture. She even saw a huge, bright mural on the wall. Her mom pointed to a very old painting. "This," she said, "is a masterpiece." Lily felt so inspired by everything she saw. She couldn't wait to go home and start her own masterpiece right away!



كما تعلمون، كانت ليلي فنانة صغيرة السن تحب الرسم. لذا، في أحد أيام السبت، أخذتها عائلتها إلى معرض فني كبير. أوه، لقد كانت متحمسة جداً! همست: «واو! انظروا إلى ذلك!» أولاً، رأت لوحات ضخمة مرسومة على قماش الرسم. قالت: «ممم، أتمنى لو كانت فرشاة الرسم ولوحة الألوان معي الآن!» ثم، دخلوا إلى غرفة بها خرف جميل وتمثال خشبي ضخم اعتاد على نحته أحد الفنانين. بدا قويًا وعظيمًا جداً! أحببت ليلي أيضاً منحوتة غريبة، وملونة. حتى إنها رأت لوحة جدارية ضخمة براقعة على الحائط. أشارت أمها إلى لوحة قديمة جداً. قالت: «هذه، تحفة فنية». شعرت ليلي بالهام شديد من كل ما رأت. لم تستطع الانتظار للذهاب إلى المنزل وتبدأ في تحفاتها الفنية على الفور!

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 Lily went with her family to a big museum. ()
- 2 Lily had her paintbrush and palette at the art gallery. ()
- 3 A strange, colorful sculpture was one of Lily's favorites. ()

3. (✓)

2. (X)

1. (X)

Answers:

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:



- 1 Lara visited an art gallery with her family. ()
- 2 She wished she had brought her pen and notebook. ()
- 3 They saw a stone statue in the room. ()
- 4 Lara felt inspired by everything she saw. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The museum showed a tall made of stone. It looked like a man.
a. sculpture b. cupboard c. window d. bridge
- 2 A large was painted on the school wall.
a. carpet b. mural c. curtain d. door
- 3 We visited an art to see different paintings.
a. station b. supermarket c. hospital d. gallery
- 4 The students were by their hardworking teacher.
a. scared b. tired c. inspired d. angry
- 5 This beautiful bird has very feathers.
a. colorful b. wooden c. inspired d. young
- 6 We saw beautiful vases in the shop.
a. clothes b. toy c. pottery d. book
- 7 The artist a beautiful bird on the canvas.
a. washed b. drew c. bought d. read
- 8 The nurse kind words to calm the little child.
a. carved b. shouted c. painted d. whispered

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

artist – gallery – carve – whispered – masterpiece

Samy loved drawing and coloring. One day, he visited a big art ⁽¹⁾ with his family. He ⁽²⁾, "Wow!" when he saw the bright paintings on the canvas. His father showed him a famous ⁽³⁾ from many years ago. It was carved by a famous artist, and it looked so powerful. Samy felt inspired to become a great ⁽⁴⁾ in the future.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 paintbrush. – I – my – had – wish – I

2 pointed – mom – old – Her – to – painting. – a very

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 How did lily feel after visiting the gallery

2 they walked into a room with beautiful pottery

4 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"An art gallery"

- What kinds of art were there in the gallery?
- How did you feel after you visited the gallery?

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

frame	إطار	story	قصة	inside	داخل
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	images	صور	types	أنواع
talent	موهبة	creativity	إبداع	stone	حجر
artwork	عمل فني	forever	إلى الأبد	shapes	أشكال
visitors	زوار	feeling	شعور/إحساس	imagination	خيال

Adjectives الصفات

famous	مشهور	great	عظيم	alive	على قيد الحياة
modern	حديث	boring	ممل	difficult	صعب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mix يخلط/يمزج	mixed	mixed
create يُنشئ/يبتكر	created	created
prefer يفضل	preferred	preferred
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
remember يتذكر	remembered	remembered
use يستخدم	used	used
seem يبدو	seemed	seemed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
tell يخبر	told	told
show يعرض/يُظهر	showed	shown
make يجعل/يصنع	made	made
find يجد	found	found



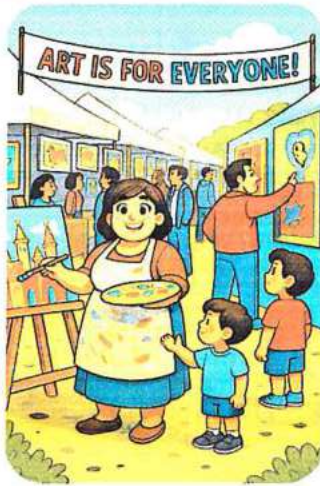
Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

something special	شيء ما مميز	stand quietly	يقف بهدوء
each other	بعضهم بعضًا	full of	مليء بـ
on a canvas	على قماش الرسم	pieces of art	قطع فنيّة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Every frame tells a story. Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph that shows something special. Artists use their paintbrush and palette to mix colors and create beautiful images on a canvas. Some artists prefer sculpture, while others enjoy painting, but both types of art show talent and creativity. Great artists can carve wood or stone to make strong shapes that seem alive! Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces that people remember forever. Inside a gallery, you can find both modern and old pieces of art. Sometimes, visitors stand quietly and whisper to each other about what they see. Art is everywhere; it's neither boring nor difficult. It's full of color, feeling, and imagination!

كل إطار يحكي قصة. داخل الإطار، يمكن أن تكون هناك إما لوحة أو صورة فوتوغرافية تُظهر شيئاً ما مميزاً. يستخدم الفنانون فرشاة الرسم ولوحة الألوان الخاصة بهم لمزج الألوان وابتكار صور جميلة على قماش الرسم. يُفضّل بعض الفنّانين النحت، بينما يستمتع آخرون بالرسم، لكن كلا النوعين من الفن يُظهران الموهبة والإبداع. يمكن للفنّانين العظماء نحت الخشب أو الحجر لصنع أشكال قوية تبدو على قيد الحياة! ليس كل عمل فني مشهوراً، لكن بعضها يصبح تحف فنيّة يتذكرها الناس إلى الأبد. داخل المعرض، يمكنك أن تجد كلّاً من القطع الفنيّة الحديثة والقديمة. أحياناً، يقف الزوار بهدوء ويهمسون لبعضهم بعضاً عمّا يرونه. الفن موجود في كل مكان؛ إنه ليس مملاً ولا صعباً. إنه مليء بالألوان، الإحساس، والخيال!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 He put his painting in a wooden before hanging it on the wall.
a. frame b. brush c. book d. palette
- 2 The students made small of art using colored paper and glue.
a. clouds b. trees c. pieces d. mountains
- 3 Good artists use their to make new and creative shapes.
a. songs b. money c. food d. imagination
- 4 The teacher told the students to stand in the playground.
a. sleepy b. quietly c. angrily d. badly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

whisper – alive – painting – types – wood

Many people enjoy visiting art galleries. Inside an art gallery, you can find many ⁽¹⁾ of artwork. Some artists prefer ⁽²⁾, while others enjoy making sculptures with ⁽³⁾ or stone. The most talented artists can make their work look so real, as if it were ⁽⁴⁾! Whether it's a painting, a photograph, or a sculpture, art always inspires us to see the world in new, beautiful ways.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- art is full of color feeling, and imagination.

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 What can be inside a frame?

- 2 What can you find inside a gallery?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Conjunction Pairs أدوات العطف المزدوجة

- Conjunction pairs are pairs of words that come together to connect two equal words or phrases in a sentence.

أدوات العطف المزدوجة هي كلمتان تأتيان معاً لربط كلمتين أو عبارتين متساويتين في جملة.

either...or

- We can use **either...or** to talk about a choice between two things.

يمكننا استخدام **either...or** بمعنى «إما...أو» للتحدث عن الاختيار بين شيئين.

Ex: – Inside a frame, there can be **either** a painting **or** a photograph.



– At the club, you can play **either** football **or** basketball.



neither...nor

- We use **neither...nor** to say that two things are not true.

نستخدم **neither...nor** بمعنى «لا هذا...ولا» لنقول إن شيئين غير صحيحين.

Ex: – Art is **neither** boring **nor** difficult.



– She likes **neither** tea **nor** juice.



both...and

- We use **both...and** to say that two things are true at the same time.

نستخدم **both...and** بمعنى «كلا...و» لنقول إن شيئين صحيحان في نفس الوقت.

Ex: – You can find **both** modern **and** old pieces of art.



– You can meet **both** Ali **and** Omar in the classroom.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I will go to the park or the cinema.
a. both b. either c. neither d. and
- 2 My brother can play the guitar and the piano.
a. so b. neither c. either d. both
- 3 The children saw the lion nor the tiger at the zoo.
a. both b. or c. neither d. either
- 4 You can take the chocolate cake or the fruit one.
a. both b. either c. neither d. nor
- 5 We met the teachers and the new students.
a. both b. every c. neither d. either
- 6 She can wear either the red dress the blue one.
a. nor b. and c. or d. but
- 7 The classroom is both organized clean.
a. and b. nor c. or d. so
- 8 We can go swimming cycling. We are busy.
a. neither ... nor b. either ... or c. both ... and d. so ... and

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 They can travel (neither) by bus or by train.
- 2 My sister speaks (either) English and French.
- 3 The question is (both) easy nor clear.
- 4 Hazem likes both reading (or) writing.
- 5 She wants to be either a doctor (nor) a teacher.
- 6 The movie was neither interesting (and) funny.
- 7 I like (either) watching TV nor playing video games.
- 8 The new school is (neither) big and near my house.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Art tells stories through paintings, photographs, and sculptures. Artists use paintbrushes, palettes, and canvases to create colorful images that show feeling and imagination. Some artists carve wood or stone to make powerful sculptures, while others paint beautiful paintings. Inside galleries, people see both old and modern artworks. Visitors often whisper as they admire masterpieces. Art is found everywhere; it is neither boring nor difficult. It's full of life, color, and creativity. Art is a great way to express what is in your mind and around you. It is also a great source of inspiration.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to
 a. artists b. paintings c. visitors d. sculptures
- 2 The text talks about and artists.
 a. art b. colors c. shapes d. wood

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 How does art tell stories?

.....

- 4 What do artists use to create colorful images?

.....

- 5 What does the underlined word "whisper" mean?

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 You can wear (neither) the blue shoes or the black ones.
- 2 Our teacher is both smart (or) patient.

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



talented

موهوب



mural

لوحة جدارية



incredible

لا يُصدق



sketch

رسم تخطيطي (مسودة)

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

truly	حقًا	art exhibition	معرض فني	absolutely	بالتأكيد/تمامًا
definitely	بالتأكيد	sphinx	أبو الهول	really	فعلاً/حقًا
woman	امرأة	university student	طالب جامعي	also	أيضًا

Adjectives الصفات

amazing	رائع	Egyptian	مصري	old	قديم
tiny	ضئيل/صغير جدًا	interesting	شيق	small	صغير

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
imagine يتخيل	imagined	imagined
visit يزور	visited	visited



Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
begin يبدأ	began	begun

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

made a big statue صنع تمثالاً كبيراً	right next to مباشرة بجانب
--------------------------------------	----------------------------

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Ali : Karim, remember that amazing art exhibition we visited last month? It was about a truly talented Egyptian artist.

يا كريم، هل تتذكر ذلك المعرض الفني الرائع الذي زرناه الشهر الماضي؟ كان عن فنان مصري موهوب حقاً.

Karim: Oh, yes! It was about Mahmoud Mokhtar. He made a big statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. I cannot imagine how he began to carve this huge statue.

أوه، نعم! كان عن محمود مختار، صنع تمثالاً ضخماً يُسمى نهضة مصر. يُظهر امرأة وأبا الهول. لا أستطيع أن أتخيل كيف بدأ في نحت هذا التمثال الضخم.

Ali : I know! The sculpture was absolutely incredible. I also saw his first sketch for it. But I definitely preferred his paintings. Did you see the beautiful mural he created?

أنا أعرف! كانت المنحوتة لا تُصدق تماماً، رأيت أيضاً أول رسم تخطيطي له. لكنني بالتأكيد فضّلت لوحاته. هل رأيت اللوحة الجدارية الجميلة التي ابتكرها؟

Karim: I did! And I saw the small canvas he painted when he was a university student. It was right next to both his old palette and a tiny paintbrush. His pottery room was also very interesting. He really was a talented artist.

نعم رأيتها! ورأيت لوحة قماش الرسم الصغيرة التي رسمها عندما كان طالباً جامعياً. كانت مباشرة بجانب كل من لوحة ألوانه القديمة وفرشاته الصغيرة جداً. كانت غرفة الخزف الخاصة به شيقة أيضاً. كان فناناً موهوباً حقاً.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My sister is very at drawing. She can make any picture look real!
a. lazy b. noisy c. talented d. angry
- 2 The new museum was so that everyone wanted to visit it again.
a. boring b. incredible c. dirty d. quiet
- 3 Before painting, the artist made a quick in his notebook.
a. song b. sketch c. meal d. palette
- 4 The statue of Nahdit Masr shows a woman and a/an
a. sphinx b. mural c. paintbrush d. artist

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

truly – exhibition – creating – statue – palette

Last weekend, my family and I visited an art exhibition. In one of the rooms, we saw a large ⁽¹⁾ of a famous writer. It looked so real that everyone stopped to take photos. The ⁽²⁾ also showed a variety of colorful and old pottery. The artist who made them was ⁽³⁾ talented and loved ⁽⁴⁾ amazing works of art.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- the sculpture was absolutely incredible

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Who was Mahmoud Mokhtar, and what did he make?

- 2 What did Mahmoud Mokhtar paint when he was a university student?

B Pronunciation



Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:

In English, one part of a word is said stronger and louder than the others. This is called **word stress**. Stress helps us understand and say words correctly.

في اللغة الإنجليزية، يُنطق جزء من الكلمة بصوت أقوى وأعلى من الأجزاء الأخرى. هذا ما يُسمَّى بتشديد الكلمة. التشديد يساعدنا على فهم الكلمات ونطقها بشكل صحيح.

تشير هذه الدائرة ● إلى أن المقطع الصوتي فوقها، والذي تحته خط، مشدد (stressed).
وتشير هذه الدائرة ● إلى أن المقطع الصوتي فوقها غير مشدد (unstressed).

Ex:

- pre-sent (noun) → • a gift • هدية: هبة
- pre-sent (verb) → • to give or show something • يقدم: أن تعطي أو تظهر شيئاً ما
- re-cord (noun) → • a CD or collection of music • تسجيل: أسطوانة مدمجة أو مجموعة موسيقية
- re-cord (verb) → • to make a sound or video recording • يسجل: أن تسجل صوتاً أو مقطع فيديو

Syllable Stress

تشديد المقاطع الصوتية

Two-Syllable Words

كلمات ذات مقطعين صوتيين

Nouns and adjectives الأسماء والصفات

Stress the first syllable

التشديد على المقطع الصوتي الأول

Ex: ta-ble pic-ture hap-py
teach-er

Verbs الأفعال

Stress the second syllable

التشديد على المقطع الصوتي الثاني

Ex: be-gin de-cide re-lax

Three-Syllable Words

كلمات ذات ثلاثة مقاطع صوتية

– If the word ends with -er or -ly, stress the first syllable.

• إذا انتهت الكلمة بـ -er أو -ly، فقم بوضع التشديد على المقطع الصوتي الأول.

Ex: man-ag-er clev-er-ly hap-pi-ly
si-lent-ly

**Tip!**

- Let's listen carefully to how the syllables change! هيا نستمع بعناية إلى كيفية تغيير المقاطع الصوتية!

Word	Syllables	Pronunciation Tip
ease سهولة	1	It's one long sound, stretch it like "eeez". إنه صوت طويل واحد، مدها مثل "eeez".
easy سهل	2	Say it as EE-zee. The first syllable is strong. انطقها EE-zee. المقطع الصوتي الأول قوي.
easily بسهولة	3	Say it as EE-zuh-lee. Keep your voice light and smooth. انطقها EE-zuh-lee. حافظ على صوتك خفيفًا وسلسًا.

- Clap the syllables while you say them: صفق للمقاطع الصوتية أثناء نطقها:

ease (1) easy (2) easily (3)

Extra Words**كلمات إضافية****Two-Syllable Words**

ap-ple	pen-cil	ar-tist
pal-ette	draw-ing	sculp-ture
a-bout	stat-ue	

Three-Syllable Words

com-pu-ter	beau-ti-ful	el-e-phant
re-mem-ber	E-gyp-tian	mas-ter-piece
pot-ter-y	tal-ent-ed	a-maz-ing
mu-se-um		

Tryout

- 1 Listen and circle the words that have the first syllable stressed:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمات التي بها المقطع الصوتي الأول مشدد:

relax – happily – record (verb) – begin – picture



Play Audio

- 2 Say and write the number of syllables:

قل واكتب عدد المقاطع الصوتية:

a table b talented c silently d decide

2 (d)

3 (c)

3 (b)

2 (a)

1. happily – picture

Answers:

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النصّ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a talented Egyptian artist. He created many amazing artworks. One of his most famous pieces is the statue of Nahdit Masr. It is a huge sculpture that shows a woman and a sphinx. He carved it with great skill. If you go to an art exhibition, you will surely hear his name and notice how people admire his incredible sculptures. He usually made a small sketch before creating his larger works. He loved working with pottery and stone to make beautiful art. Today, he is remembered as one of Egypt's greatest artists.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined word "talented" means "someone who is very at doing something".
 a. bad b. nice c. good d. huge
- 2 Mahmoud Mokhtar loved working with and stone to make beautiful art.
 a. wood b. pottery c. plastic d. cloth

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What is the general idea of the text?

- 4 Where can you hear Mahmoud Mokhtar's name and see his artworks?

- 5 What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

- 1 was – artist. – exhibition – a talented – The – about – Egyptian

- 2 you – the – Did – see – beautiful – mural?

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة

vase	زهريّة	base	قاعدة	top	قمة
clay	طين/صلصال	shades	ظلال	surface	سطح
patterns	أنماط	toothpick	عود أسنان	design	تصميم
art projects	مشاريع فنيّة	artifacts	تحف/قطع أثرية	tourists	سياح
workshops	ورش عمل	museum	متحف	treasures	كنوز
history	تاريخ	garden	حديقة	halls	قاعات
temples	معابد	café	مقهى	mask	قناع
King Tutankhamun	الملك توت عنخ آمون	the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير		

Adjectives

الصفات

golden	ذهبي	wide	عريض/واسع	narrow	ضيق
ancient	عتيق/قديم جدًا	shiny	لامع	favorite	مفضّل

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
shape	يشكّل	shaped		shaped	
polish	يلمع	polished		polished	
dry	يجف	dried		dried	
talk	يتحدث	talked		talked	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
build	يبني	built		built	
see	يرى	saw		seen	



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

by hand	باليـد	feel smooth	لملمسه ناعم
around the middle	حول الوسط	proud of	فخور بـ
worked hard on	عمل بجد على	took my time to	أخذ وقتي لـ
make it special	يجعله مميزًا	watch videos	يشاهد مقاطع فيديو
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	learn about	يتعلّم عن



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

I made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a wide, round base and a narrow top. I used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand, mixing some of the colors to create new shades.



The surface feels smooth and shiny because I polished it after it dried. There are small patterns around the middle, which I made using a toothpick. I'm proud of my vase because I worked hard on the design and took my time to make it special. It's one of my favorite art projects!



صنعتُ زهرية طينية ملوّنة. إنها طويلة، بقاعدة مستديرة، واسعة، وقمة ضيقة. استخدمتُ الطين الأحمر، الأزرق، والأصفر لأشكّلها بعناية باليد، وخلطت بعض الألوان لإنشاء ظلال جديدة.

السطح يبدو ناعمًا ولامعًا لأنني لمّعته بعد أن جفّ. توجد أنماط صغيرة حول الوسط، والتي صنعتها باستخدام عود أسنان. أنا فخورة بزهرتي لأنني عملت بجد على التصميم وأخذت وقتي لجعلها مميزة. إنها واحدة من مشاريعي الفنية المفضلة!

**Tip!**

- A descriptive paragraph helps you **show** your ideas, not just **tell** them. Using **adjectives** and **details** (like bright colors or soft clay) helps the reader **imagine** your art. It makes your writing more fun, clear, and interesting to read!
- تساعدك الفقرة الوصفية على إظهار أفكارك، وليس مجرد سردها. استخدام الصفات والتفاصيل (مثل الألوان الزاهية أو الطين الناعم) يساعد القارئ على تخيل فنك. هذا يجعل كتاباتك أكثر متعة، وضوحًا، وتشويقًا للقراءة!

- When you write a descriptive paragraph about an artwork, you can use some **adjectives** in your descriptive sentences to describe:

• عندما تكتب فقرة وصفية عن عمل فني، يمكنك استخدام بعض الصفات في جُمْلِكَ الوصفية لتصف:

Colors

الألوان

- bright زاهٍ
- dark غامق
- colorful ملوّن
- pale باهت

Shapes

الأشكال

- round مستدير
- square مربع
- triangle مثلث
- curved منحني

Textures

الملمس

- rough خشن
- smooth أملس
- soft ناعم
- hard صلب

Sizes

الأحجام

- tiny ضئيل
- small صغير
- medium وسط
- large كبير
- huge ضخّم

Read and notice the following steps:

اقرأ ولاحظ الخطوات الآتية:

Steps of writing a descriptive paragraph about an artwork

خطوات كتابة فقرة وصفية عن عمل فني ما



- 1 Say what you made. قُل ما صنعت.
- 2 Write what it looks like (the color, size, and shape). اكتب كيف يبدو (اللون، الحجم، والشكل).
- 3 Mention what materials and tools you used to make it. اذكر المواد والأدوات التي استخدمتها في صنعه.
- 4 Describe the texture of what you made (e.g. soft, smooth). صف ملمس ما صنعت (مثل: ناعم، أملس).
- 5 End with how you feel (e.g. happy, sad, proud), and why. اختتم بوصف شعورك (مثل: سعيد، حزين، فخور) ولماذا.



Look and read:

Making a Poster About a Famous Place in Egypt

صنع ملصق عن مكان مشهور في مصر

pictures/
drawings

صور / رسومات

The Grand Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الكبير

main header

عنوان رئيسي

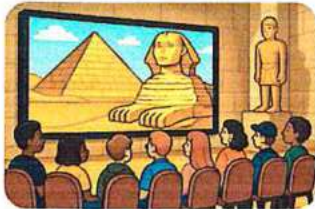


People visit the museum to see ancient treasures and statues. They learn about the history of Egypt.

يزور الناس المتحف لبروا الكنوز والتماثيل القديمة. يتعلمون عن

detailed description

وصف مفصل



Students and tourists watch videos and join workshops. They learn how the ancient Egyptians built temples.

يشاهد التلاميذ والسياح مقاطع فيديو وينضمون إلى ورش عمل. يتعلمون كيف بنى المصريون القدماء المعابد.



The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts.

يحتوي المتحف على العديد من القاعات والمعارض الجميلة. يمكن للزوار رؤية القناع الذهبي للملك توت عنخ آمون وغيرها من القطع الأثرية المشهورة.



After the visit, families enjoy food in the museum's garden café. They talk about what they saw and take photos.

بعد الزيارة، تستمتع العائلات بالطعام في مقهى حديقة المتحف. يتحدثون عما رأوه ويلتقطون الصور.

Tips for making a poster about a famous place in Egypt

نصائح لصنع ملصق عن مكان مشهور في مصر

- Choose a clear and attractive title.
- Write detailed sentences.
- Glue expressive pictures or drawings.

اختر عنوانًا واضحًا وجذابًا.

اكتب جملًا مفصلة.

الصق صورًا أو رسومات معبرة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Can you put the red flowers in the over there?
a. clay b. pattern c. vase d. project
- 2 The of the house are huge and long.
a. ideas b. workshops c. halls d. treasures
- 3 I usually use a/an after eating.
a. design b. statue c. artifact d. toothpick
- 4 We saw the golden of King Tutankhamun at the museum.
a. history b. video c. workshop d. mask

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

proud – middle – clay – worked – polished

Last week, I made a small cup in my art class. I used ⁽¹⁾ to shape it carefully with my hands and made some lines around it. When it became hard, I ⁽²⁾ it to make it shiny and smooth. My teacher smiled when she saw it and said it looked beautiful. I was very ⁽³⁾ of my work because I ⁽⁴⁾ hard and followed all the steps correctly.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

- 1 watch – workshops. – videos – join – Students – and

- 2 small – around – There – patterns – the middle. – are

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- families enjoy food in the museum's garden café

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"An artwork you made"

- What did you use to make it?
- What did it look like?

Vocabulary

sculpture	منحوتة	whisper	تهمس	masterpiece	تحفة فنية
carve	ينحت	paintbrush	فرشاة الرسم	palette	لوحة الألوان
art gallery	معرض فني	canvas	قماش الرسم	talented	موهوب
artist	فنان	imagination	خيال	sketch	رسم تخطيطي (مسودة)
temples	معابد	halls	قاعات	museum	متحف
clay	طين/صلصال	toothpick	عود أسنان	sphinx	أبو الهول
vase	زهريّة	artifacts	تحف/قطع أثرية	patterns	أنماط
mask	قناع	workshops	ورش عمل	treasures	كنوز
frame	إطار	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	creativity	إبداع
incredible	لا يُصدّق	mural	لوحة جدارية	statue	تمثال

Language

Conjunction Pairs

- Conjunction pairs are pairs of words that come together to connect two equal words or phrases in a sentence.

• أدوات العطف المزدوجة هي كلمتان تأتيان معًا لربط كلمتين أو عبارتين متساويتين في جملة.

either...or

- We can use **either...or** to talk about a choice between two things.
Ex: – Inside a frame, there can be **either** a painting **or** a photograph.
– At the club, you can play **either** football **or** basketball.

neither...nor

- We use **neither...nor** to say that two things are not true.
Ex: – Art is **neither** boring **nor** difficult.
– She likes **neither** tea **nor** juice.

both...and

- We use **both...and** to say that two things are true at the same time.
Ex: – You can find **both** modern **and** old pieces of art.
– You can meet **both** Ali **and** Omar in the classroom.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1

A Visit to the Art Gallery

- Lily was a young artist who loved to draw. كانت ليلي فنانة صغيرة السن تحب الرسم.
- One Saturday, her family took her to a big art gallery. في أحد أيام السبت، أخذتها عائلتها إلى معرض فني كبير.
- She saw huge paintings, beautiful pottery, and a giant wooden statue. رأت لوحات ضخمة، خزفيات جميلة، وتمثالاً خشبياً عملاقاً.
- Lily also liked a colorful sculpture and a bright mural on the wall. كما أعجبت ليلي بمنحوتة ملونة ولوحة جدارية برّاقة على الحائط.
- She felt inspired and wanted to go home to create her own masterpiece. شعرت بالإلهام وأرادت العودة إلى المنزل لتبتكر تحفتها الفنية الخاصة.

Lesson 3 (A)

An Egyptian Masterpiece

- Karim and Ali are talking about the art exhibition they visited last month. كريم وعلي يتحدثان عن المعرض الفني الذي زاراه الشهر الماضي.
- The exhibition was about Mahmoud Mokhtar, a famous Egyptian artist. كان المعرض عن محمود مختار، فنان مصري مشهور.
- They both admired his big statue "Nahdit Masr" and the beautiful mural. كلاهما أعجب بتمثاله الكبير «نهضة مصر» واللوحة الجدارية الجميلة.
- Karim also liked the small canvas Mokhtar painted when he was a university student. أعجب كريم أيضاً بلوحة قماش صغيرة رسمها مختار عندما كان طالباً جامعياً.

Lessons 4&5

Writing Like an Artist/Think and Create

- People visit the Grand Egyptian Museum to see ancient treasures and statues. يزور الناس المتحف المصري الكبير لرؤية الكنوز والتماثيل القديمة.
- The museum has halls and galleries with famous artifacts. يحتوي المتحف على قاعات ومعارض بها قطع أثرية مشهورة.
- Visitors and students watch videos and join workshops to learn about ancient Egypt. يشاهد الزوار والتلاميذ مقاطع فيديو ويشاركون في ورش عمل للتعلم عن مصر القديمة.
- Families eat in the garden café after the visit and talk about what they saw. تأكل العائلات الطعام في مقهى الحديقة بعد الزيارة وتحدث عما رآوه.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

لوحة الألوان	فرشاة الرسم
قماش الرسم	تهمس
تحفة فنية	معرض فني
ينحت	منحوتة
لوحة جدارية	فنان

Lesson (2)

حجر	صورة فوتوغرافية
إبداع	إطار
خيال	زوار
أشكال	موهبة
أنواع	عمل فني

Lesson (3)

لا يُصدّق	أبو الهول
ضئيل/صغير جدًا	رسم تخطيطي (مسودة)
شيق	موهوب
بالتأكيد	طالب جامعي

Lessons (4&5)

زهرة	قاعدة
قمة	طين/صلصال
ظلال	سطح
أنماط	عود أسنان
تصميم	ورش عمل
كنوز	قاعات
معابد	مقهى
قناع	تحف/قطع أثرية



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	P.P.	Present	Past	P.P.
wish	wished	wished	see		
know	knew	known	remember		
look			make		
draw			find		
love			seem		
take			imagine		
start			begin		
feel			visit		
mix			use		
tell			shape		
create			build		
prefer			polish		
show			dry		
enjoy			talk		



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"A visit to a museum"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

Nouns

1. treasures 2. halls 3. café

Verbs

1. visited 2. saw 3. enjoyed

Others

1. ancient 2. amazing 3. in

2 Form your sentences.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. We visited the Grand Egyptian Museum last week.

3. The museum has amazing halls and galleries.

2. We saw many ancient treasures and statues.

4. We enjoyed food in the museum's garden café.

3 Write your paragraph.

We visited the Grand Egyptian Museum last week. We saw many ancient treasures and statues. The museum has many amazing halls and galleries. We joined a workshop and watched videos about the ancient Egyptians. We enjoyed food in the museum's garden café. We took photos and talked about the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and everything else we saw.

اكتب فقرتك.

Write it yourself!

اكتب بنفسك!

"Your favorite Egyptian artist"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences 1. 2. 3. 4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

A visit to the art gallery

My class went to an art gallery on Saturday. It was full of amazing artworks, paintings, pottery, and a big mural. Our teacher showed us a colorful sculpture. It was made of stone, and it was a masterpiece. I felt so inspired by everything I saw. I couldn't wait to go home and start my own masterpiece right away.



An artwork you made

I made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a wide base and a narrow top. I shaped the clay carefully by hand and mixed colors to create new shades. I polished the surface to make it shiny and smooth. The surface has small patterns that I made with a toothpick. I'm proud because I worked hard on the design.



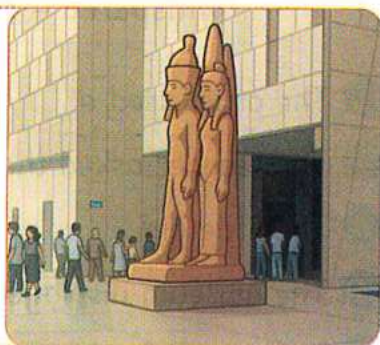
My favorite Egyptian artist

My favorite Egyptian artist is Mahmoud Mokhtar. He created what I think is a masterpiece. He created a big statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. It's truly an incredible sculpture. He also created a beautiful mural, and he painted some small, beautiful canvases when he was a university student. He really was a talented artist.



The Grand Egyptian Museum

Tourists from all around the world visit the Grand Egyptian Museum. They visit it to learn about ancient Egyptian history and see ancient treasures and statues. The museum has many amazing things. Tourists can see famous artifacts, like the golden mask of King Tutankhamun. They can also watch videos and join workshops. They can enjoy food in the museum's garden café.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Read the word, then choose the correct syllable split:

اقرأ الكلمة، ثم اختر التقسيم الصحيح للمقطع الصوتي:

- 1 amazing
a. am-azing b. a-maz-ing
- 2 sculpture
a. sculp-ture b. scu-lpture
- 3 museum
a. mu-se-um b. mus-eum
- 4 drawing
a. d-rawing b. draw-ing

2 Complete the sentences using either...or, neither...nor, or both...and:

أكمل الجمل مستخدماً either...or، neither...nor، أو both...and:

- 1 You can choose a painting a drawing for your project.
- 2 The classroom is organized clean; it's always messy.
- 3 You can use the ruler the pencil to draw the picture.
You have the two.
- 4 The new teacher is kind helpful.
- 5 The museum has old artworks modern ones.

3 Fill in the blanks using words from the box: املا الفراغات مستخدماً الكلمات من الصندوق:

whispered – canvas – palette – sculpture – masterpiece

- 1 The artist used a to mix red, blue, and yellow colors.
- 2 The teacher asked the students to paint on a large
- 3 The little girl a secret to her best friend during art class.
- 4 The museum displayed a beautiful stone of an ancient king.
- 5 The artist's final painting was a true that everyone admired.

Test on unit (1)

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Amira is a young engineer. ()
2. Last month, she went to an art exhibition. ()
3. She saw beautiful pottery, colorful sculptures, and giant wooden statues. ()
4. She thought about making a colorful clay vase. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We saw Mahmoud Mokhtar's at the exhibition yesterday.
a. masterpiece b. mistake c. café d. feeling
2. A is a soft tool used by artists to put paint on a picture.
a. toothbrush b. palette c. paintbrush d. canvas
3. I liked the red vase and the green one.
a. both b. either c. neither d. to
4. I ate neither pizza pasta yesterday.
a. and b. or c. no d. nor

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****gallery – imagination – stone – paint – difficult**

Every artist is different. Some artists only ⁽¹⁾ and create images. Others carve wood or ⁽²⁾ They make strong shapes and sculptures. Some artists create masterpieces that people remember forever, and some don't. You can find an artist's artwork in a ⁽³⁾ or at an exhibition. Art is everywhere, full of color, feeling, and ⁽⁴⁾ You just need to look around you.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Tourists visit the Grand Egyptian Museum from all over the world to see the **ancient** treasures and statues, and to learn about the history of Egypt. Egyptians also visit it and feel proud of their rich history. The museum has halls and galleries where **they** can see famous artifacts like the golden mask of King Tutankhamun. They can also watch videos and join workshops to learn how the ancient Egyptians built the temples. They not only enjoy the statues and artifacts, but they also enjoy food in the museum's garden café and can take amazing photos.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**ancient**" is ".....".
a. old b. modern c. amazing d. small
2. Egyptians feel of their rich history.
a. bored b. inspired c. proud d. sad

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to?
.....

4. What can visitors see in the museum's halls and galleries?
.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. You can (neither) come to the party or stay home.
2. She is both smart (or) beautiful.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. inspired – They – everything – felt – they – by – saw.
.....

2. made – using – I – small – a toothpick. – patterns
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. did you see the beautiful sculpture she created
.....

2. I wish i had my paintbrush and palette with me
.....

8 Write a biography of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“A famous Egyptian artist”

(incredible – talented)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

art – sculptures – artist – sketch – artwork – gallery

Grandma : What did you do last Friday?

Youssef : I went to an ⁽¹⁾ exhibition with my friends.

Grandma : Wow! What kind of ⁽²⁾ did you see there?

Youssef : I saw ⁽³⁾, paintings, and murals.

Grandma : Did you see anything by your favorite ⁽⁴⁾?

Youssef : Yes, I saw the first ⁽⁵⁾ that Mahmoud Mokhtar drew.

(B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You can take (**neither**) the bus or the train to school.
2. He is (**either**) helpful and kind.
3. My friends have neither homework (**or**) exams today.
4. We visited both the museum (**nor**) the park yesterday.
5. The artist might paint (**both**) in the morning or at night.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. A is the surface, often cloth, an artist paints on.
a. sculpture b. canvas c. paintbrush d. palette
2. Dad will buy apples or bananas from the market.
a. whether b. neither c. either d. both
3. Both my tablet phone stopped working yesterday.
a. or b. so c. and d. nor
4. She put the photos she took in beautiful
a. frames b. images c. stones d. recipes



5. The artist used clay nor wood in this sculpture.
a. neither b. both c. either d. such
6. King Tutankhamun's golden mask is a
a. masterpiece b. palette c. color d. visitor
7. I because the baby was sleeping.
a. shouted b. whispered c. sang d. knocked
8. He is interested in singing and photography.
a. nor b. either c. both d. neither
9. They will eat either pasta pizza tonight.
a. or b. and c. so d. nor
10. The artist mixed the colors on a/an
a. palette b. gallery c. artist d. family

(C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. paintbrush – canvas – palette – treasure (.....)
2. colorful – smooth – masterpiece – incredible (.....)
3. carve – paint – create – modern (.....)
4. museum – king – gallery – temple (.....)
5. favorite – mask – statue – artifact (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I took my family to the Grand Egyptian Museum last weekend. The place was beautiful, with wide halls and galleries. My children loved seeing the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and the huge statues. We joined a workshop where my children learned about building temples. It was fun and educational at the same time. After exploring the galleries, we relaxed in the garden café. The children talked about what they saw while we enjoyed some Egyptian food. Visiting the museum made us all feel proud of our country's history. It was truly a special family day.

**(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:**

1. I took my family to Al-Azhar Park. ()
2. The children loved seeing the golden mask of King Tutankhamun. ()
3. We ate some Egyptian food in the garden café. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4. We joined a workshop about building
a. schools b. temples c. houses d. parks
5. The visit made us feel of our country.
a. sad b. happy c. bored d. proud

(D) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences:**

“Your visit to an art gallery”

(artist – sculpture – masterpiece – colorful – pottery)

2 Unit

Wonderful Inventions



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Describe an invention and explain how it works using clear sentences
- Discuss problems and brainstorm creative gadget ideas
- Present and describe a model or drawing of an invention clearly to others

- وصف اختراع وشرح كيفية عمله باستخدام جمل واضحة
- مناقشة مشكلات وتبادل أفكار حول الأجهزة الإبداعية
- عرض نموذج أو رسم لاختراع ووصفه بوضوح للآخرين

Listening

- Identify the main ideas and specific details in short talks or interviews about inventions and inventors

• تحديد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الدقيقة في محادثات أو مقابلات قصيرة حول الاختراعات والمخترعين

- Follow step-by-step spoken instructions for using or building a gadget

• اتباع تعليمات شفوية خطوة بخطوة لاستخدام أو بناء جهاز

- Identify key vocabulary and phrases related to inventions while listening

• تحديد مفردات وعبارات رئيسية متعلقة باختراعات أثناء الاستماع

Reading

- Identify key vocabulary words related to ancient and modern inventions
- Identify the main ideas and the sequence of events in a text
- Recognize and understand the meaning of prefixes (re-, un-) in context

- تحديد مفردات رئيسية متعلقة باختراعات قديمة وحديثة
- تحديد الأفكار الرئيسية وتسلسل الأحداث في نص
- التعرف على معاني البادئات (re-, un-) وفهمها في سياق

Writing

- Write a short paragraph describing an invention idea, explaining its purpose, design, and benefits

• كتابة فقرة قصيرة تصف فكرة اختراع، موضحًا غرضها، تصميمها، وفوائدها

- Use key vocabulary and relative pronouns (who, which, that, whose) correctly in writing

• استخدام مفردات رئيسية وضمانات الوصل (who, which, that, whose) بشكل صحيح في الكتابة

- Create a simple blueprint or design for a new gadget

• ابتكار مخطط أو تصميم بسيط لجهاز جديد

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Play Audio

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



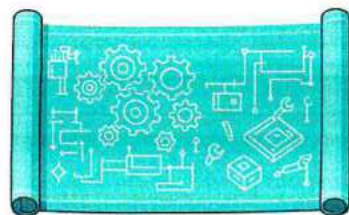
invention

اختراع



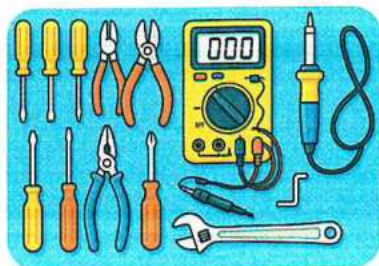
gadgets

أجهزة/أدوات صغيرة



blueprint

مخطط



tools

أدوات



assemble

يُجمّع



improve

يُحسّن/يطوّر

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

engineer	مهندس	ideas	أفكار	way	طريقة
machine	آلة	step	خطوة	parts	أجزاء
wheels	عجلات	solar power	طاقة شمسية	solar robot	إنسان آلي يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية

Adjectives الصفات

talented	موهوب	young	صغير السن/شاب	amazing	رائع/مدهش
simple	بسيط	detailed	مُفصّل	right	صحيح/مناسب

**Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
create	يُنشئ/يبتكر	created		created	
design	يَصمّم	designed		designed	
use	يستخدم	used		used	
move	يتحرك	moved		moved	
place	يضع	placed		placed	
explore	يستكشف	explored		explored	
work	يعمل	worked		worked	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
tell	يقول/يخبر	told		told	
is	يكون (للمفرد)	was		been	
has/have	يملك/لديه	had		had	

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

Welcome back!	مرحبًا بكم من جديد!	run on	يعمل بـ
feel like	يبدو كأنه/يشبه	Let's get started!	هيا نبدأ!

Definitions

تعريفات

blueprint	مخطط	a detailed plan or drawing for making something خطة أو رسمة مفصلة لصنع شيء ما
assemble	يُجمّع	to put parts together to make a whole أن يجمع الأجزاء معًا ليكون شيئًا ما
improve	يُحسّن/يطوّر	to make something better, or more effective أن يجعل شيئًا أفضل، أو أكثر فعالية
tools	أدوات	things used to fix, build, or create things الأشياء المستخدمة لإصلاح أشياء، بنائها، أو إنشائها
invention	اختراع	a new idea, product, or method created for the first time فكرة، منتج، أو طريقة جديدة تم ابتكارها لأول مرة
gadget	جهاز/أداة صغيرة	a small, useful device or tool جهاز أو أداة صغيرة، ومفيدة



(Conversation) main points

النقاط الأساسية في المحادثة



- A young engineer presents an amazing invention – a solar robot gadget.
مهندس شاب يقدم اختراعًا مذهلاً – جهاز إنسان آلي يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية.
- He wanted to make a simple gadget like a machine.
أراد أن يصنع جهازًا بسيطًا يشبه الآلة.
- First, he started by designing a detailed blueprint.
أولاً، بدأ بتصميم مخطط تفصيلي.
- To use it, assemble the small parts.
لكي تستخدمه، قم بتجميع الأجزاء الصغيرة.
- You need to put it in the sun, as it runs on solar power.
تحتاج أن تضعه في أشعة الشمس، لأنه يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية.

Conversation



Listen, look, and read:

استمع، انظر واقرأ:



Play Audio

S B page 26



Interviewer

1 Welcome back! Today, we have a talented young engineer here with an amazing invention – the solar robot gadget. Can you tell us more about this gadget?

مرحبًا بكم من جديد! اليوم، لدينا مهندس شاب موهوب مع اختراع رائع – جهاز إنسان آلي يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية. هل تستطيع أن تخبرنا بالمزيد عن هذا الجهاز؟

2 Thank you! I wanted to create a simple gadget that feels like a small machine. The first step was designing a detailed blueprint.

شكرًا لك! أردت أن أبتكر جهازًا بسيطًا يبدو كأنه آلة صغيرة. كانت الخطوة الأولى هي تصميم مخطط مفصل.



Young Engineer



3 Wow! How do we use it?

واو! كيف نستخدمه؟

4 First, you assemble the small parts using the right tools. The robot runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun. If something isn't working, you can easily improve it. This invention is a fun way to explore new ideas every day. Let's get started!

أولاً، تقوم بتجميع الأجزاء الصغيرة مستخدمًا الأدوات المناسبة. يعمل الروبوت بالطاقة الشمسية، لذلك تتحرك العجلات عندما تضعه في أشعة الشمس. إذا كان هناك شيء لا يعمل، يمكنك تحسينه بسهولة. هذا الاختراع وسيلة ممتعة لاستكشاف أفكار جديدة كل يوم. هيا نبدأ!



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:



- 1 Adel joins a science competition at his school. ()
- 2 The smart bottle keeps drinks warm. ()
- 3 Adel forgets to make a blueprint before creating the bottle. ()
- 4 Adel connects wires and sensors inside the bottle. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 A is a detailed plan or drawing for making something.
a. tool b. gadget c. blueprint d. part
- 2 Workers the parts of the machine carefully before using it.
a. assemble b. tell c. feel d. forget
- 3 The car couldn't move because one of its was broken.
a. doors b. wheels c. windows d. seats
- 4 She bought a kitchen that slices vegetables in seconds.
a. rug b. sink c. window d. gadget
- 5 To is to make something better or more effective.
a. move b. improve c. place d. use
- 6 The internet is one of the greatest
a. inventions b. machines c. gadgets d. screens
- 7 The device on solar power.
a. swims b. throws c. runs d. walks
- 8 Drawing a diagram is the first before building the device.
a. color b. shape c. letter d. step

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

detailed – time – place – gadgets – created

In Egypt, schools care about technology. My school organized a competition called “The Young Talented Engineer”. All the students ⁽¹⁾ amazing, small, and useful inventions and ⁽²⁾ I made a solar charger. As the first step, I designed a ⁽³⁾ blueprint. To use it, you need to assemble the parts with the right tools and ⁽⁴⁾ it in the sun for some time.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 way – ideas. – It's – explore – to – a fun – new

2 Omar? – we – How – it, – do – use

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 can you tell us more about this gadget

2 today, we have a talented young engineer

4 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

“A simple gadget you created”

(blueprint – assemble)

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



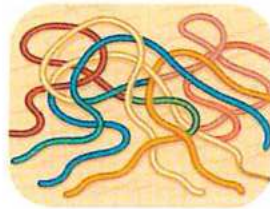
fabric

قماش



wooden

خشبي



threads

خيوط



linen

كتان

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

loom	النول (آلة لنسج الخيوط)	clothes	ملابس	blankets	بطانيات
worker	عامل	skills	مهارات	size	حجم
cloth	قماش	pieces	قطع	process	عملية
creativity	إبداع	shape	شكل	the ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء

Adjectives

الصفات

skilled	ماهر	strong	قوي	possible	ممکن
fine	فاخر	colorful	ملون	modern	حديث

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
call	يُسَمَّى / يُعْرَفُ بـ	called		called	
train	يتدرب	trained		trained	
inspire	يلهم	inspired		inspired	
craft	يصنع يدويًا	crafted		crafted	
produce	ينتج	produced		produced	



Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
draw يرسم	drew	drawn
show يبيِّن / يُظهر	showed	shown
stand يقف	stood	stood

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

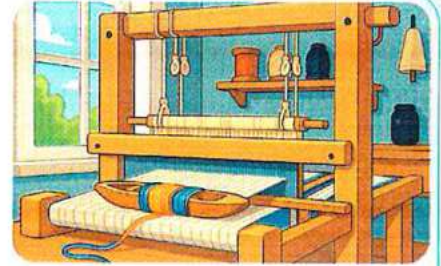
Thousands of years ago, منذ آلاف السنين،	Once it was ready, بمجرد أن أصبح جاهزًا،
work well يعمل بكفاءة	up and down لأعلى ولأسفل



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the loom, which helped them make clothes, blankets, and beautiful fabrics from linen. Before building a loom, an engineer or skilled worker, who was trained in crafting tools, would draw a blueprint to show the size, shape, and parts needed. Then, the workers would assemble the wooden pieces carefully so the loom, which needed to stand strong, could work well.



Once it was ready, people used the loom to build fabric by moving threads up and down, a process that needed a lot of skills. The Egyptian loom made it possible to produce fine, colorful cloth which showed the creativity of ancient Egypt. Today, this ancient invention still inspires modern machines that make our clothes.

منذ آلاف السنين، ابتكر المصريون القدماء اختراعًا مذهلاً يُعرف بالنول، الذي ساعدهم في صنع ملابس، وبطانيات، وأقمشة جميلة من الكتان. قبل إنشاء النول، كان المهندس أو العامل الماهر، الذي تلقى تدريبًا على صناعة الأدوات يدويًا، يرسم مخططًا هندسيًا يبيِّن الحجم، الشكل، والأجزاء المطلوبة. ثم، يقوم العمال بتجميع القطع الخشبية بعناية حتى يتمكن النول، الذي يجب أن يبقى قويًا، من العمل بكفاءة. بمجرد أن أصبح جاهزًا، استخدم الناس النول لصنع القماش عن طريق تحريك الخيوط لأعلى ولأسفل، وهي عملية تتطلب الكثير من المهارة. مكَّن النول المصري من إنتاج قماش فاخر ملوَّن مما أظهر إبداع مصر القديمة. اليوم، لا يزال هذا الاختراع القديم مصدر إلهام للآلات الحديثة التي تصنع ملابسنا.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The ancient Egyptians used the to make clothes and blankets.
a. printer b. robot c. loom d. internet
- 2 Workers move up and down to make fabric.
a. bricks b. wood c. threads d. metals
- 3 Our teacher helps us improve our reading and writing
a. prizes b. skills c. holidays d. clothes
- 4 The ancient Egyptians' inventions showed their
a. laziness b. copying c. creativity d. sleeping

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

produce – linen – inspire – wooden – blueprints

The ancient Egyptians created many amazing inventions. One of these was the loom. Trained workers drew ⁽¹⁾ and carefully assembled the ⁽²⁾ pieces to make the loom work well. These workers were skilled and creative. People used the loom to make clothes, blankets, and beautiful fabrics from ⁽³⁾ The Egyptian loom produced fine and colorful cloth. The inventions of the ancient Egyptians still ⁽⁴⁾ us and make us proud.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- The ancient egyptians created the loom

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Why did the workers draw blueprints before building the loom?
.....
- 2 Why do you think the ancient Egyptians were creative?
.....



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Relative Pronouns ضمائر الوصل

Usage الاستخدام

- Relative pronouns are words that join two sentences together.

• ضمائر الوصل هي الكلمات التي تربط جملتين معًا.

- “Who” is used for people – the person doing an action.

who
(للعاقل)

Ex: – The engineer **who** designed the robot is smart.

• تُستخدم “Who” للأشخاص - الشخص الذي يقوم بفعل ما.



- “Whose” is used to show possession.

whose
(للملكية)

Ex: – The student **whose** invention won was happy.

• تُستخدم “Whose” لإظهار الملكية.



- “Which” is used for things and animals.

which
(لغير العاقل)

Ex: – The solar robot **which** has wheels is a cool gadget.

• تُستخدم “Which” للأشياء والحيوانات.



- “That” is used for things and ideas. It adds information that is important.

that
(لغير العاقل)

Ex: – The gadget **that** I bought broke.

• تُستخدم “That” للأشياء والأفكار. تضيف معلومات مهمة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The boy won the race was happy.
a. whose b. who c. which d. where
- 2 The car engine is loud needs fixing.
a. who b. which c. that d. whose
- 3 The movie we watched was funny.
a. that b. when c. who d. whose
- 4 The vegetables, have vitamins, are healthy.
a. which b. whose c. who d. when
- 5 The boy bag is red is my friend.
a. which b. that c. whose d. where
- 6 The birds, sing every morning, have colorful feathers.
a. who b. when c. which d. whose
- 7 The girl skirt is pink is my sister.
a. who b. which c. whose d. that
- 8 The plan we need to finish by Friday will take all our time.
a. where b. who c. whose d. that

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 Laila bought a phone (where) has a very good camera.
- 2 Bees are insects (whose) make honey.
- 3 The student (whose) won the competition is proud.
- 4 The woman (which) lives next door is a chef.
- 5 The tool (who) I used to fix the faucet is useful.
- 6 The cake (whose) she bakes tastes delicious.
- 7 The cat (which) eyes are green is sleeping.
- 8 The kids (which) are playing outside are noisy.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

A long time ago, in ancient Egypt, workers made an important invention for making cloth. They followed a smart blueprint to make fabric from flax plants. The fabric was called linen, and it was soft, cool, and strong. First, the workers made thin threads from the flax. Then they assembled the threads to make big pieces of cloth. The linen was used to make clothes for both rich and poor people. The workers were very skilled, and their work helped all Egyptians wear good clothes. This invention was very useful and lasted for many years.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined phrase "assembled the threads" means "they put the threads"

a. away b. down c. together d. off

- 2 The ancient Egyptian workers were very

a. skilled b. sad c. tired d. rich

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

- 4 Why do you think linen was an important material for the ancient Egyptians?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 The engineer, (which) was trained in crafting tools, drew the blueprint.

- 2 The park (whose) has a beautiful lake is my favorite place.

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



measure

يقيس



time

وقت



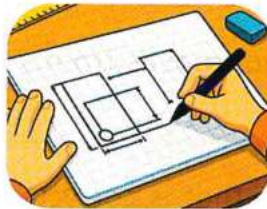
gear

ترس



pendulum

بندول



design

يصمّم



accurate

دقيق

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

sand	رمل	inventors	مخترعون	clock	ساعة
slowly	بطء	second	ثانية	workshop	ورشة عمل

Adjectives الصفات

clever	ماهر/ذكي	famous	مشهور	fascinating	مبهر/رائع
--------	----------	--------	-------	-------------	-----------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
study يدرس	studied	studied
change يغيّر	changed	changed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
keep يبقي/يحافظ على	kept	kept
become يصبح	became	become



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

Long ago,	منذ زمن بعيد،	from side to side	من جانب إلى جانب
full of	مليء بـ	all over Europe	في جميع أنحاء أوروبا
tell the time	يعرف الوقت		

Definitions

تعريفات

gear	ترس	a part of a machine that helps parts move together جزء من آلة يساعد الأجزاء على التحرك معًا
pendulum	بندول	a piece that moves from side to side to keep time قطعة تتحرك من جانب إلى جانب لقياس الوقت
accurate	دقيق	something that is correct and exact شيء ما صحيح ومضبوط



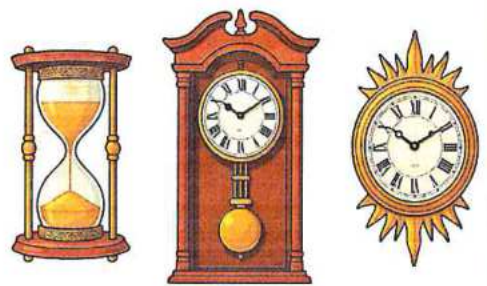
Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. Later, clever inventors built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum.

The pendulum, which moved slowly from side to side, helped the clock keep time more accurately. One engineer, who studied how things move, designed a clock that could

measure every second. The workshop where he worked was full of tools and small gears. The clock, whose design was new and exciting, became famous all over Europe. It was one of the fascinating inventions that changed how people lived and worked every day.



منذ زمن بعيد، استخدم الناس الشمس والرمل لمعرفة الوقت. لاحقاً، ابتكر مخترعون أذكى أول ساعة تعمل بالتروس والبندول، الذي يتحرك ببطء من جانب إلى جانب، ساعد الساعة على قياس الوقت بدقة أكبر. صمّم أحد المهندسين، الذي درس كيفية تحريك الأشياء، ساعة يمكنها قياس كل ثانية. كانت الورشة التي عمل فيها مليئة بالأدوات والتروس الصغيرة. الساعة، التي كان تصميمها جديداً ومثيراً، أصبحت مشهورة في جميع أنحاء أوروبا. كانت أحد الاختراعات الرائعة التي غيرت طريقة عيش الناس وعملهم كل يوم.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 If something is, it is correct and exact.
 a. small b. new c. exciting d. accurate
- 2 The moves from side to side to help the clock keep time accurately.
 a. gear b. pendulum c. second d. sun
- 3 There are a lot of tools and gears in the
 a. workshop b. classroom c. library d. hospital
- 4 Students worked together to posters for the school exhibition.
 a. design b. measure c. fill d. move

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

measured – gears – inventors – time – design

In ancient times, people used the sun and sand to tell time. Later, ⁽¹⁾ created clocks using gears and a pendulum. One engineer designed a clock that ⁽²⁾ every second. His workshop was filled with tools and ⁽³⁾ The clock's new ⁽⁴⁾ became famous across Europe and was one of the key inventions that changed daily life and how people measured time.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- did the clock become famous all over Europe

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Who designed a clock that could measure every second?
- 2 How did the pendulum help keep time more accurately compared to older methods?

B

Pronunciation

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر ورّد:



- A prefix is a small part we add to the beginning of a word.
- البادئة هي جزء صغير نضيفه إلى بداية الكلمة.
- It changes the meaning of the word and sometimes changes the sound when we say it.
- إنها تغيّر معنى الكلمة وأحياناً تغيّر الصوت عندما نقولها.

Prefix: re- البادئة re-

Meaning: again or back

مرة أخرى أو عودة

- When we add re- to a word, it means to do something again.
- عندما نضيف re- إلى الكلمة، فإن ذلك يعني فعل شيء ما مرة أخرى.

Word	الكلمة	Meaning	المعنى
rebuild	يعيد البناء	build again	يبنى مرة أخرى
rewrite	يعيد الكتابة	write again	يكتب مرة أخرى
recycle	يعيد التدوير	use again	يستخدم مرة أخرى
return	يعود	come back	يرجع مرة أخرى

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

Prefix: re-

replay	يعيد عرض/تشغيل	restart	يعيد تشغيل
reread	يعيد قراءة		

Tip!

- When you say re-, make it sound like “ree” before a strong syllable (like in rebuild), but like “ri” before weak ones (like return).
- عندما تقول re-، اجعلها تبدو مثل “ree” قبل مقطع صوتي قوي كما في كلمة (rebuild)، ولكن مثل “ri” قبل المقاطع الصوتية الضعيفة كما في كلمة (return).

**Prefix: un- un- البادئة****Meaning:** not or the opposite of

ليس أو عكس

- When we add **un-**, we make the meaning negative.

• عندما نضيف **un-**، فإننا نجعل المعنى منفيًا.

Word الكلمة	Meaning المعنى
unhappy	not happy ليس سعيدًا
unsafe	not safe ليس آمنًا
unfair	not fair ليس عادلاً
unlock	open (opposite of lock) يفتح (عكس يقفل)

Extra Words**كلمات إضافية****Prefix: un-**

unkind

غير طيب / قاسٍ

unlucky

سيئ الحظ

Tip!

- The stress usually stays on the main word, not on the prefix.

• عادةً ما يبقى التشديد على الكلمة الرئيسية، وليس على البادئة.

Ex: – unhappy → the stress on “hap”, not “un”.un-hap-py

• • •

Tryout**Read and choose the correct answer:**

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The villagers worked together to (rewrite – rebuild) their homes after the storm.
- Ali is sad, which means he is (unhappy – happy).
- The teacher asked me to (recycle – rewrite) my paragraph, so I wrote it again.

Answers:

1. rebuild

2. unhappy

3. rewrite

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Time plays a very important role in our daily lives because it helps us know when to work, eat, and rest. Long ago, people used the sun to tell the time, but it was not very accurate. Later, inventors created clocks with gears and a pendulum that moved from side to side. Engineers worked carefully in their workshops using special tools to design, test, and improve clocks. One of them designed a clock that could measure every second. This new invention became famous and helped people everywhere keep time accurately.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text is about the history of
 a. clocks b. tools c. gears d. workshops
- 2 The underlined word "accurate" means ".....".
 a. wrong b. exact c. slow d. new

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

- 4 What did engineers do in their workshops?

- 5 Why did people need other ways to measure time instead of using the sun?

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 He (locked) the door. Then, he entered the house.
- 2 Salma (rebuilds) the plastic bottles. She uses them again.

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

structure	مبنى/بناء	electricity	كهرباء	energy	طاقة
factories	مصانع	concrete	أسمنت/خرسانة	stone	حجر
crops	محاصيل	villages	قرى	supply	إمداد
southern Egypt	جنوب مصر	the Aswan Dam	سد أسوان	future	مستقبل

Adjectives الصفات

huge	ضخم	powerful	قوي/ضخم	great	عظيم
------	-----	----------	---------	-------	------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
want	يريد	wanted		wanted	
generate	يولد/ينتج	generated		generated	
protect	يحمي	protected		protected	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
grow	يزرع	grew		grown	
give	يعطي	gave		given	

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

was built by	بُني بواسطة	around the dam	حول السد
made of	مصنوع من	all year	طوال العام
benefit from	يستفيد من	stop the Nile from flooding	يمنع النيل من الفيضان



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Visit to Aswan Dam

زيارة إلى سد أسوان

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt that helps people every day. It was built by engineers who wanted to stop the Nile from flooding and to generate powerful energy for homes and factories. The dam, which is made of stone and concrete, also keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year. It helps protect villages that are near the river and gives Egypt a clean supply of electricity. The people who live around the dam benefit from its energy and water. The Aswan Dam is one of the great modern buildings that changed Egypt's future.



سد أسوان هو مبنى ضخم في جنوب مصر يساعد الناس كل يوم. بُني بواسطة مهندسين أرادوا أن يمنعوا النيل من الفيضان وتوليد طاقة قوية للمنازل والمصانع. السد، المصنوع من الحجارة والخرسانة، يحتفظ أيضًا بالمياه التي يستخدمها المزارعون لزراعة المحاصيل طوال العام. ويساعد على حماية القرى القريبة من النهر ويزود مصر بإمدادات كهربائية نظيفة. يستفيد الناس الذين يعيشون حول السد من طاقته ومياهه. سد أسوان هو واحد من أعظم المباني الحديثة التي غيرت مستقبل مصر.



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ و لاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing about an invention

نصائح للكتابة عن اختراع ما



- **Start with a problem:** Your invention needs to fix something that's difficult or annoying.
ابدأ بمشكلة: يحتاج اختراعك إلى إصلاح شيء صعب أو مزعج.
- **Describe your idea:** Tell us about your design and what your invention looks like.
صف فكرتك: أخبرنا عن تصميمك وكيف يبدو اختراعك.
- **Explain how it helps:** Say what your invention does and how it will improve things.
اشرح كيف يساعد ذلك: اذكر ما يفعله اختراعك وكيف سيُحسن الأمور.
- **Use key words:** Remember to use the vocabulary, like tool and design.
استخدم الكلمات المفتاحية: تذكر استخدام مفردات، مثل: أداة وتصميم.

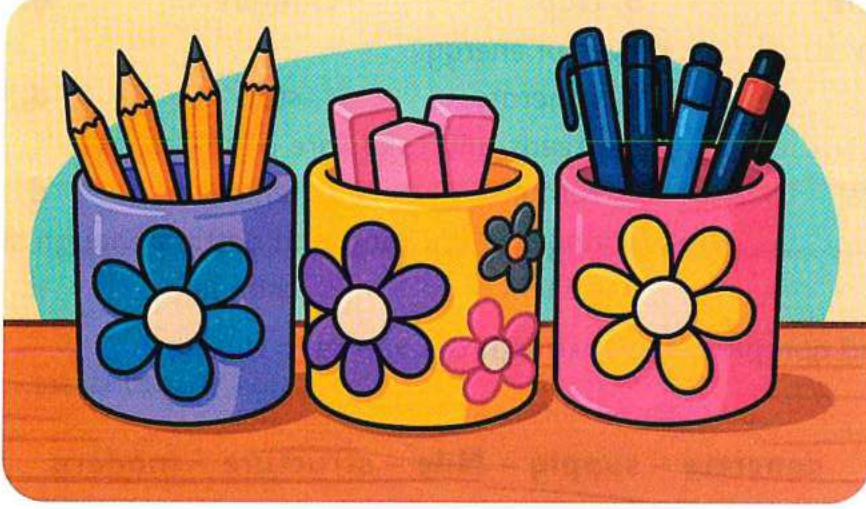


Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Project Idea: "Smart Pencil Holder"

فكرة مشروع: «حامل أقلام ذكي»



Steps of making a smart pencil holder

خطوات صنع حامل أقلام ذكي



1

Plan your idea: Draw a simple sketch of a pencil holder with separate sections for pens, pencils, and erasers.

خطط لفكرتك: ارسم رسمًا تخطيطيًا بسيطًا لحامل أقلام بأقسام منفصلة لأقلام الجاف، أقلام الرصاص، والمخايات.

2

Collect your materials: Use recycled boxes, cups, or small containers.

اجمع المواد الخاصة بك: استخدم صناديق، أكوابًا، أو عبوات صغيرة معاد تدويرها.



3

Build your gadget: Cut, tape, or glue the containers together to make your holder.

قم ببناء أدايتك: قص أو ألصق العبوات معًا بالصمغ أو الشريط اللاصق لصنع الحامل الخاص بك.

4

Practice: Explain how it keeps your desk tidy and helps you find your supplies easily.

التطبيق العملي: اشرح كيف يساعدك في إبقاء مكتبك مرتبًا ويساعدك في العثور على أدايتك بسهولة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The students built a small using wooden sticks and glue.
a. structure b. crop c. future d. energy
- 2 Dams can powerful energy.
a. help b. generate c. stop d. live
- 3 In spring, plant seeds and take care of the crops.
a. doctors b. farmers c. teachers d. engineers
- 4 We all from eating healthy food and getting enough sleep.
a. find b. benefit c. change d. make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

concrete – supply – Nile – structure – modern

I like to visit the Cairo Tower. It is an important ⁽¹⁾ in Egypt. It was built by Egyptian engineers. They used ⁽²⁾ and steel to build it. The tower attracts many tourists every year, which supports Egypt's economy. It also helps people learn about ⁽³⁾ Egyptian design. From the top, visitors can see the ⁽⁴⁾ and the whole city.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

- 1 Dam – day. – people – The Aswan – every – helps

- 2 a clean – gives – electricity. – supply of – Egypt – The dam

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- The aswan Dam stops the Nile from flooding

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"An invention you created"

(tool – design)

Unit 2 Review

Vocabulary

invention	اختراع	gadgets	أجهزة/أدوات صغيرة	blueprint	مخطط
tools	أدوات	assemble	يُجمّع	improve	يُحسّن/يطوّر
machine	آلة	wheels	عجلات	fabric	قماش
wooden	خشبي	threads	خيوط	linen	كتان
engineer	مهندس	loom	النول (آلة لنسج الخيوط)	skills	مهارات
process	عملية	colorful	ملوّن	possible	ممكّن
measure	يقيس	time	وقت	gear	ترس
pendulum	بندول	design	يصمّم	accurate	دقيق
structure	مبنى/بناء	inventors	مخترعون	fascinating	مبهّر/رائع
supply	إمداد	concrete	أسمنت/خرسانة	powerful	قوي/ضخم

Language

Relative Pronouns

- Relative pronouns are words that join two sentences together.

• ضمائر الوصل هي الكلمات التي تربط جملتين معًا.

who

- is used for people – the person doing an action.

• تُستخدم للأشخاص - الشخص الذي يقوم بفعل ما.

Ex: – The engineer **who** designed the robot is smart.

whose

- is used to show possession.

• تُستخدم لتظهر الملكية.

Ex: – The student **whose** invention won was happy.

which

- is used for things and animals.

• تُستخدم للأشياء والحيوانات.

Ex: – The solar robot **which** has wheels is a cool gadget.

that

- is used for things and ideas. It adds information that is important.

• تُستخدم للأشياء والأفكار. تضيف معلومات مهمة.

Ex: – The gadget **that** I bought broke.



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1

The Brilliant Engineer

- A young Egyptian engineer introduces a robot powered by solar energy.
مهندس مصري شاب يقدم إنسانًا آليًا يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية.
- He dreamed of creating a simple machine, so he began by designing a blueprint.
كان يحلم بإنشاء آلة بسيطة، لذلك بدأ في تصميم مخطط.
- People connect its small parts together.
يقوم الناس بتوصيل أجزائه الصغيرة معًا.
- Then, they put it in the sun to make it work.
ثم، يضعونه في الشمس ليعمل.
- This smart invention encourages people to explore new ideas.
هذا الاختراع الذكي يشجع الناس على اكتشاف أفكار جديدة.

Lesson 2

The Egyptian Loom

- Long ago, the ancient Egyptians invented the loom.
منذ زمن بعيد، اخترع المصريون القدماء النول.
- It was used to make clothes, blankets, and linen fabrics.
استُخدم في صناعة ملابس، بطانيات، وأقمشة الكتان.
- To make it, an engineer or skilled worker first drew a blueprint for it.
لتصنيعه، رسم مهندس أو عامل ماهر مخططًا له أولاً.
- Workers then built the loom carefully with wooden parts.
ثم بنى العمال النول بعناية باستخدام أجزاء خشبية.
- Then, people moved threads up and down to make fabric.
ثم، حرك الناس الخيوط لأعلى ولأسفل لصنع قماش.
- The loom showed Egyptian creativity. It still inspires modern machines.
أظهر النول إبداعًا مصريًا. ولا يزال يلهم الآلات الحديثة.

Lessons 4&5 A Visit to Aswan Dam/Think and Create

- The Aswan Dam is a big structure in southern Egypt.
سد أسوان بناءً ضخمًا في جنوب مصر.
- It was built to stop the Nile River from flooding.
بُني لمنع فيضان نهر النيل.
- Engineers also made it to produce electricity for homes and factories.
صنعه المهندسون أيضًا لإنتاج الكهرباء للمنازل والمصانع.
- The dam stores water for farmers to use all year.
يخزن السد المياه ليستخدمها المزارعون طوال العام.
- It protects nearby villages from floods.
يحمي القرى المجاورة من الفيضانات.
- It gives Egypt clean and strong energy.
يمنح مصر طاقة نظيفة وقوية.
- The Aswan Dam is a modern project that changed Egypt's future.
سد أسوان مشروع حديث غير مستقبل مصر.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

أجهزة/أدوات صغيرة	اختراع
أدوات	مخطط
يُحسّن/يطوّر	يُجمّع
طاقة شمسية	أجزاء
مُفصّل	عجلات
مهندس	صحيح/مناسب

Lesson (2)

كتان	قماش
النول (آلة لنسج الخيوط)	خيوط
إبداع	خشبي
قِطع	ممكّن
ماهر	بطانيات
حجم	عامل

Lesson (3)

يقيس	وقت
بندول	ترس
دقيق	يصمّم
بيطء	مخترعون
ورشة عمل	ثانية
مبهر/رائع	مشهور

Lessons (4&5)

قوي/ضخم	مبنى/بناء
مصانع	إمداد
سد أسوان	كهرباء
حجر	أسمنت/خرسانة



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	P.P.	Present	Past	P.P.
create			produce		
design			keep		
use			study		
move			generate		
place			grow		
explore			train		
tell			work		
call			show		
has/have			change		
draw			become		
stand			want		
inspire			protect		
craft			give		



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of SIXTY (60) words using the the words below:

“An ancient invention”

① Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

Nouns

1. loom 2. blankets 3. blueprint

Verbs

1. helped 2. drew 3. created

Others

1. skilled 2. colorful 3. amazing

② Form your sentences.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. The loom was an amazing invention.
3. It helped people make colorful clothes and blankets.

2. The ancient Egyptians created it.

4. An engineer or a skilled worker drew a blueprint of it.

③ Write your paragraph.

The loom was an amazing invention. The ancient Egyptians created it. It helped people make colorful clothes and blankets. An engineer or a skilled worker drew a blueprint of it. People used the loom to build fabric by moving threads up and down. They produced fine clothes using it.

اكتب فقرتك.

اكتب بنفسك! Write it yourself!

“The Aswan Dam”

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences

1. 2.
3. 4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

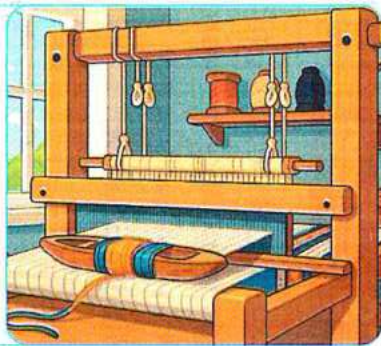
A young inventor

My friend Hany likes creating inventions. His latest invention is the solar robot. It's a simple gadget that works like a small machine. To make it, he designed a detailed blueprint with clear steps. Then, he assembled the small parts using the right tools. It runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun.



The Egyptian loom

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians created an important invention called the loom. The ancient Egyptians used it to make beautiful fabrics from linen for clothing and decorations. Before building a loom, an engineer or skilled worker drew a blueprint to show the size, shape, and parts needed to build it. The Egyptian loom helped produce fine, colorful cloth.



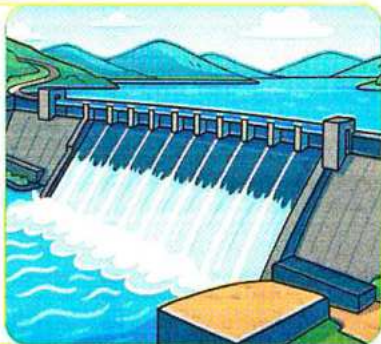
The first clock

People used the sun and sand to tell time in the past. Later, inventors created clocks with gears and pendulums to measure time more accurately. One clever engineer designed a special clock that could count every second. His new design quickly became famous across Europe. This important invention changed how people lived, worked, and organized their daily activities every day.



Our visit to the Aswan Dam

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt. Engineers built it to stop the Nile River from flooding nearby towns and villages. The dam generates powerful energy for homes and factories. It is made of stone and concrete. The dam also keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year. It gives Egypt a clean supply of electricity.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Read, sort, and write:

اقرأ، صنف واكتب:

invention – machine – gadget – tool – build –
improve – fix – create – assemble – blueprint –
engineer – model – idea – design

Noun	Verb
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

2 Choose the correct relative pronoun:

اختر ضمير الوصل الصحيح:

- 1 The scientist (which – who) discovered the new gadget is very famous.
- 2 The project (whose – which) we built in class won first prize.
- 3 The engineer (whose – that) ideas helped improve the robot visited our school.
- 4 The new robot (who – which) students made in the workshop worked perfectly.
- 5 The inventor (which – who) we interviewed shared many helpful tips.

3 Choose a word from the box below to complete each sentence:

اختر كلمة من الصندوق أدناه لإكمال كل جملة:

assemble – invent – improve – tools – gadget

- 1 We use to fix and assemble machines.
- 2 I want to a new kind of robot that cleans my room.
- 3 My dad had to the pieces of our new chair.
- 4 This new helps me to find things faster.
- 5 You can your writing by correcting your mistakes.

Test on unit (2)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Youssef designed the backpack's layout on his tablet. ()
2. Youssef assembled the parts without using any tools. ()
3. The backpack gives voice reminders when a student forgets something. ()
4. The backpack does not have a solar panel. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To means to put parts together to make a whole.
a. run b. place c. move d. assemble
2. My dress is made of It's very comfortable.
a. clock b. sand c. linen d. tool
3. The car has a blue roof is mine.
a. who b. which c. where d. whose
4. The girl won the prize is my friend.
a. who b. where c. which d. whose



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gear – wheels – changed – design – measured

The car is an amazing invention. The first car was invented over one hundred years ago. Karl Benz invented it in Germany. Its ⁽¹⁾ was simple but smart, with three ⁽²⁾ and a small engine. He made every part accurate so the car could move safely. The car had a special ⁽³⁾ to help it start and stop. This design ⁽⁴⁾ how people travel forever.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I visited the Alexandria Library last year. The Alexandria Library is a beautiful and important **modern** building in Egypt. It was built near the sea to continue the dream of the old library that was lost long ago. This structure has a round shape and large glass walls that let sunlight in. Inside, there are a huge number of books that supply people with knowledge. The library also helps protect Egypt's history and culture by keeping old documents safe. It shows how Egypt values learning and education. Many students and visitors come every day to read, study, and explore new ideas.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**modern**" is
a. new b. big c. ancient d. good
2. The Alexandria Library's structure has a shape.
a. square b. triangle c. rectangle d. round

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why are the round design and glass walls important for a library's purpose?
.....
4. Describe how the Alexandria Library helps protect Egypt's history.
.....
5. What is the main idea of the text?
.....



(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The boy (whose) is standing there is my cousin.
2. The bag (who) I bought yesterday is brown.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. to – I – create – gadget. – a small – wanted

.....

2. Aswan – changed – The – future. – Egypt's – Dam

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. the loom helped people make clothes blankets, and fabrics.

.....

2. how did people know the time in the past

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the the words below:

“The Egyptian loom”

(invention – threads)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

invented – pendulum – accurate – sand – slowly – inventors

Omar: Do you know how people told the time in the past?

Samy: Yes. They used ⁽¹⁾ and the sun.

Omar: Wow! Who ⁽²⁾ the clock later?

Samy: Some clever ⁽³⁾ They used gears and a ⁽⁴⁾

Omar: What does a pendulum do?

Samy: It moves ⁽⁵⁾ from side to side. It helps the clock keep time more accurately.

(B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The elephant, (who) has large ears, is the largest land animal.
2. The boy (which) bag is blue is my friend.
3. The engineer (which) built the loom was very clever.
4. Give me the tools (whose) are used to assemble the machine's parts.
5. I pressed the button to (start) my computer after it froze.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The chair has legs.
a. cotton b. paper c. fabric d. wooden
2. I use a ruler to the desk.
a. open b. use c. measure d. move
3. We check the on the clock.
a. time b. food c. test d. patients
4. The mechanic needs his to fix the car.
a. shops b. tools c. chairs d. windows



5. She is sad. Her watch has a broken inside.
a. gear b. pen c. ship d. box
6. This is the loom helped ancient Egyptians make clothes.
a. who b. which c. whose d. when
7. Where is the book I read yesterday?
a. where b. whose c. that d. who
8. I know a boy father is a doctor.
a. when b. that c. who d. whose
9. The boy was to his little sister. He broke her doll.
a. unhappy b. unkind c. unlucky d. unsafe
10. I will this book to the library tomorrow.
a. return b. replay c. rebuild d. recycle

(C) ■ Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. fabric – linen – blanket – cloth (.....)
2. rebuild – rewrite – measure – replay (.....)
3. assemble – build – fix – tools (.....)
4. new – useful – benefit – young (.....)
5. were – who – which – that (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Lina is a young inventor who loves technology. She created a pair of smart shoes. They help people walk safely. First, Lina designed a blueprint. Then, she made her shoes with soft fabric. She added lights that glow in the dark and speakers that say, "Watch your step!" when someone gets too close to an edge, or "Be careful!" if someone is about to fall. The shoes also count steps and show the number on a small screen. Lina's invention proves that creativity can make daily life safer and more exciting.

**(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:**

1. The smart shoes can talk and warn people. ()
2. They help people run faster in races. ()
3. They help people walk safely at night. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The shoes show the number of steps on a
a. screen b. phone c. watch d. tablet
5. The underlined word "blueprint" means a plan or drawing for making something.
a. useful b. smart c. detailed d. big

(D) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences:****"A visit to the Aswan Dam"**

(structure – flooding – concrete – energy – crops)

3 Unit

Hidden Gems of Egypt

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Use common vocabulary related to ancient sites, history, and heritage
- Ask and answer questions about Egyptian monuments, tombs, and temples in short discussions
- Express opinions and feelings about visiting historical places using simple sentences
- Use new vocabulary to describe places, discoveries, and archaeological findings orally

• استخدام مفردات شائعة متعلقة بالمواقع القديمة، التاريخ، والتراث

• السؤال والإجابة عن أسئلة حول الآثار، المقابر، والمعابد المصرية في مناقشات قصيرة

• التعبير عن آراء ومشاعر حول زيارة الأماكن التاريخية باستخدام جمل بسيطة

• استخدام مفردات جديدة لوصف أماكن، اكتشافات، واكتشافات أثرية شقوياً

Listening

- Show understanding of short talks and conversations about Egyptian landmarks and history
- Recognize key vocabulary related to archaeology, temples, and monuments in listening tasks
- Identify the main idea and specific details in spoken texts about hidden Egyptian sites
- Follow short oral instructions related to visiting or describing historical places

• إظهار فهم للأحداث والمحادثات القصيرة حول المعالم المصرية والتاريخ المصري

• التعرف على مفردات رئيسية متعلقة بعلم الآثار، المعابد، والآثار في مهام استماع

• تحديد فكرة رئيسية وتفاصيل محددة في نصوص منطوقة عن مواقع مصرية مخفية

• اتباع تعليمات شفوية قصيرة متعلقة بزيارة أو وصف أماكن تاريخية

Reading

- Recognize and understand vocabulary related to archaeology, temples, tombs, and fossils
- Answer comprehension questions about informational texts describing ancient Egyptian sites
- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short reading passages
- Make simple inferences about the importance and preservation of Egyptian heritage

• التعرف على وفهم مفردات متعلقة بعلم الآثار، المعابد، المقابر، والحفريات

• الإجابة عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالنصوص المعلوماتية التي تصف المواقع المصرية القديمة

• تحديد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الداعمة في فقرات قراءة قصيرة

• التوصل إلى استنتاجات بسيطة حول أهمية التراث المصري والحفاظ عليه

Writing

- Write short, correct sentences using vocabulary about Egypt's hidden treasures
- Write short paragraphs or blog entries describing a historical place, visit, or discovery
- Use the present perfect tense correctly to describe past events with present results

• كتابة جمل قصيرة، وصحيحة باستخدام مفردات عن كنوز مصر الخفية

• كتابة فقرات قصيرة أو مدخلات مدونة تصف مكاناً تاريخياً، زيارة، أو اكتشافاً

• استخدام زمن المضارع التام بشكل صحيح لوصف أحداث الماضي بنتائج حالية

Lesson 1

The Enchanting Tuna el-Gebel

Listen, look, and repeat:

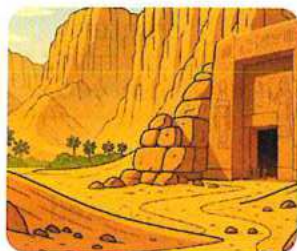
استمع، انظر وردد:



Play Audio

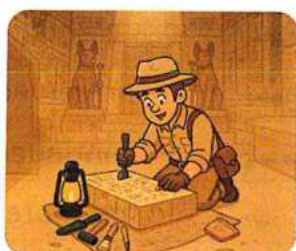
New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



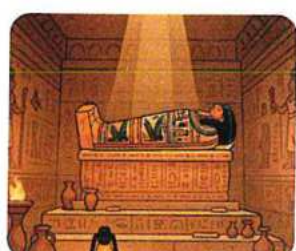
burial

دَفْن



archaeologist

عالم آثار



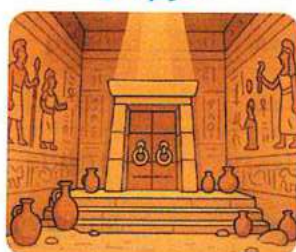
mummy

مومياء



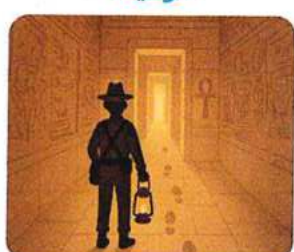
discovery

اكتشاف



chamber

غرفة



mystery

لغز

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Minya	محافظة المنيا	site	موقع	area	منطقة
researchers	باحثون	hundreds	مئات	tomb	مقبرة
corridors	ممرات	heritage	تراث	carvings	نقوش
scenes	مشاهد	styles	أنماط	visitors	زوار
high priest	كبير الكهنة	history	تاريخ	country	بلد

Adjectives الصفات

mysterious	غامض	rich	غني/خصب	ancient	عتيق/قديم جدًا
exciting	مثير	beautiful	جميل	preserved	محفوظ/محنت
colorful	ملون	Greek	يوناني	wonderful	رائع
quiet	هادئ/ساكن	unforgettable	لا يُنسى	underground	تحت الأرض



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
amaze يذهل/يدهش	amazed	amazed
create يُنشئ/يبتكر	created	created
preserve يحفظ	preserved	preserved
continue يستمر	continued	continued
fascinate يبهز	fascinated	fascinated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lie يقع	lay	lain
stand يقف	stood	stood
make يجعل/يصنع	made	made
show يظهر/يعرض	showed	shown
feel يشعر	felt	felt

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

famous for مشهور بـ	filled with مليء بـ
in the middle of في منتصف	covered with مغطى بـ
walk through يتجول خلال	travel back in time ينتقل بالزمن إلى الماضي
proud of فخور بـ	for years لسنوات

Definitions

تعريفات

archaeologist عالم آثار	a person who studies ancient places and old objects الشخص الذي يدرس الأماكن العتيقة والأشياء القديمة
mummy مومياء	a body that has been preserved for thousands of years جسم تم الحفاظ عليه (تحنيطه) لآلاف السنين
chamber غرفة	a special room inside a tomb غرفة خاصة داخل مقبرة

**(Reading) main points****النقاط الأساسية في فقرة القراءة**

- Tuna el-Gebel is a burial site near Minya. تونة الجبل هي موقع دُفَن بالقرب من محافظة المنيا.
- It's known for its underground chambers and art. تشتهر بغرفها الموجودة تحت الأرض وفنّها.
- It has many animal mummies. يها العديد من مومياوات الحيوانات.
- It includes the tomb of a high priest called Petosiris. تضم مقبرة كبير الكهنة يُدعى بيتوسيريس.
- It makes visitors feel like they traveled back in time. تجعل الزوار يشعرون كأنهم انتقلوا بالزمن إلى الماضي.

Reading**Look and read:****انظر واقرأ:****Tuna el-Gebel تونة الجبل**

In the desert near Minya lies Tuna el-Gebel, a mysterious burial site that has amazed archaeologists for years. The area is famous for its underground chambers and long corridors filled with ancient art. Researchers made many exciting discoveries, including hundreds of mummies of animals, especially preserved birds.



In the middle of the site stands the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest who lived more than two thousand years ago. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes that show both Egyptian and Greek styles. The mystery of how ancient Egyptians created such wonderful tombs and preserved animals continues to fascinate visitors. Walking through Tuna el-Gebel, people feel like they have traveled back in time. The quiet desert, the carvings, and the smell of history make the place unforgettable. Seeing these ancient burial chambers and mummies helps every Egyptian feel proud of their country's rich heritage.

في الصحراء القريبة من محافظة المنيا، تقع تونة الجبل، وهي موقع دُفَن غامض أذهل علماء الآثار لسنوات. المنطقة مشهورة بغرفها تحت الأرض وممراتها الطويلة المليئة بالفن القديم. حقق الباحثون العديد من الاكتشافات المثيرة، تتضمن مئات من مومياوات الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور المحفوظة.

في وسط الموقع، تقع مقبرة بيتوسيريس، كبير الكهنة الذي عاش قبل أكثر من ألفي عام. جدران مقبرته مغطاة بنقوش جميلة ومشاهد ملوّنة تُظهر كلا النمطين المصري واليوناني. ولا يزال لغز كيفية إنشاء المصريين القدماء هذه المقابر الرائعة وتحنيط الحيوانات تُبهر الزوار. أثناء التجوّل خلال تونة الجبل، يشعر الناس كأنهم انتقلوا بالزمن إلى الماضي. الصحراء الهادئة، النقوش، وعبق التاريخ تجعل المكان لا يُنسى. رؤية غرف الدُفَن القديمة هذه والمومياوات تساعد كل مصري على الشعور بالفخر بتراث بلده الغني.

1  Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:



- 1 Ancient Egyptians built many burial sites. ()
- 2 A burial site often has short corridors. ()
- 3 It also has tombs of ancient doctors. ()
- 4 The burial sites make Egyptians proud of Egypt's history. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The site was covered with sand and stones.
a. style b. researcher c. hundred d. burial
- 2 A/An is someone who studies ancient places and old objects.
a. doctor b. archaeologist c. engineer d. pilot
- 3 We saw a/an of an ancient king wrapped in the museum.
a. mummy b. glass c. animal d. chair
- 4 I was afraid to enter the inside the pyramid. It was dark.
a. ground b. paper c. chamber d. scarf
- 5 Some researchers were able to solve the of the lost treasure.
a. picture b. mystery c. cup d. time
- 6 This team made a great They found an ancient city.
a. discovery b. time c. place d. material
- 7 The drawings show both Greek and Egyptian
a. clay b. plastic c. styles d. years
- 8 Archaeologists found mummies of birds from thousands of years ago.
a. afraid b. tired c. preserved d. proud

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

scenes – tombs – modern – priest – Kings

There were many burial sites in ancient Egypt. One famous burial site is the Valley of the ⁽¹⁾..... It is in Luxor. It has many ⁽²⁾..... filled with treasures. The walls show different ⁽³⁾..... of the kings' daily lives. Another site is Tuna el-Gebel in Minya. It has the tomb of a high ⁽⁴⁾..... called Petosiris. The carvings on his tomb wall show both Egyptian and Greek styles.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 famous – The area – chambers. – is – for – long – its

2 discoveries. – many – Researchers – exciting – made

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 In the desert near minya lies Tuna el-Gebel

2 what animals did archaeologists discover at the site

4 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

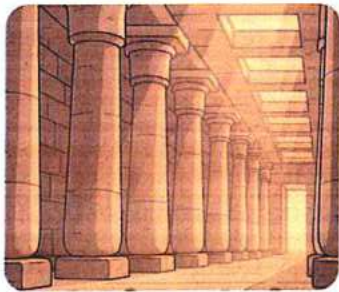
اكتب فقرة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"A burial site"

(mummies – archaeologists)

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



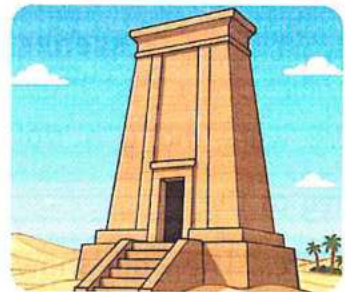
temple

معبد



ruler

حاكم



monument

أثر



border

حدود



restore

يُرمَّم

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

cities	مدن	quietly	بهدوء	Nubia	النوبة
once	ذات مرة/في السابق	treasures	كنوز	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
feeling	شعور	emperors	أباطرة	cultures	ثقافات
traditions	تقاليد	softly	بلطف/برفق	level	مستوى
experts	خبراء	carefully	بعناية	stone	حجر
ground	الأرض	gates	بوابات	kings	ملوك
god of wisdom	إله الحكمة	the High Dam	السد العالي	Thoth	تحوت (إله الحكمة في مصر القديمة)

**Adjectives** الصفات

busy	مشغول	southern	جنوبي	magical	سحري
Roman	روماني	higher	أكثر ارتفاعاً/أعلى	peaceful	مسالم/هادئ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
walk	يمشي	walked		walked	
design	يصمم	designed		designed	
add	يضيف	added		added	
respect	يحترم	respected		respected	
raise	يرفع	raised		raised	
work	يعمل	worked		worked	
move	يحرك/يتحرك	moved		moved	
protect	يحمي	protected		protected	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
become	يصبح	became		become	
build	يبني	built		built	
tell	يخبر	told		told	
shine	يسطع/يشرق	shone		shone	

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

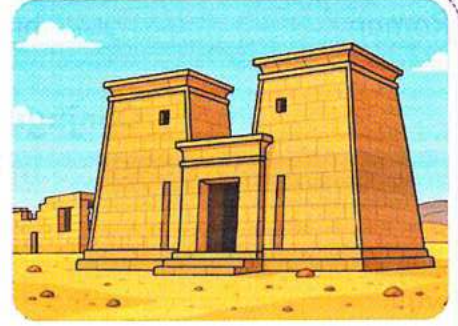
far from	بعيداً عن	over time	مع مرور الوقت
symbol of	رمز لـ	close to	بالقرب من



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Far from Egypt's busy cities, the Temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years in Nubia, near Egypt's southern border. This ancient monument has become a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history. Many rulers have designed temples for ancient gods like Thoth, the god of wisdom.



Over time, Greek and Roman emperors have added new walls and carvings, showing how different cultures have respected Egypt's traditions. The temple once stood close to the River Nile, but when the High Dam raised the water level, Egyptian experts have worked carefully to restore it and move every stone to higher ground.

Today, visitors walk through its tall gates and watch the amazing carvings that tell stories of ancient gods and kings. The sunlight shines softly on its walls, and the quiet desert around the temple creates a peaceful, magical feeling. Everyone who has visited Dakka feels proud of how Egypt has protected its history and treasures.

بعيدًا عن مدن مصر المزدحمة، ظل معبد الدكة قائمًا يهدوء لآلاف السنين في النوبة، بالقرب من الحدود الجنوبية لمصر. وقد أصبح هذا الأثر القديم رمزًا لتاريخ مصر الطويل والمشرف. صمم العديد من الحكّام معابد للآلهة القديمة مثل تحوت، إله الحكمة.

مع مرور الوقت، أضاف الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومان جدرانًا ونقوشًا جديدة، مما يظهر مدى احترام الثقافات المختلفة لتقاليد مصر. كان المعبد يقع في السابق بالقرب من نهر النيل، ولكن عندما رفع السد العالي منسوب المياه، عمل الخبراء المصريون بعناية على ترميمه ونقل كل حجر إلى أرض أكثر ارتفاعًا.

اليوم، يتجول الزوار خلال بواباته العالية ويشاهدون النقوش التي تحكي قصص الآلهة والملوك القدماء. يشرق ضوء الشمس بلطف على جدرانه، وأضفت الصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بالمعبد شعورًا هادئًا وسحريًا. كل من زار الدكة يشعر بالفخر بكيفية حماية مصر لتاريخها وكنوزها.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The soldiers protect the country's carefully.
a. planet b. book c. border d. wisdom
- 2 Ancient Egyptian built great temples and pyramids.
a. rulers b. birds c. stories d. treasures
- 3 Dakka is an ancient in Nubia.
a. history b. border c. sunlight d. temple
- 4 Tourists like visiting old, like temples, in Aswan.
a. fields b. monuments c. experts d. cats

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

Dam – stone – proud – restore – experts

Egyptian experts work hard to preserve our history. They ⁽¹⁾ ancient monuments and keep them safe. For example, the Temple of Dakka was once near the River Nile. But after the High ⁽²⁾, the water level rose. The experts moved every ⁽³⁾ of the temple to higher ground. They saved the temple. We are all ⁽⁴⁾ of our experts and their efforts.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- Greek and roman emperors have added new walls

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Where is the Temple of Dakka?
- 2 How does everyone who has visited the Temple of Dakka feel?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

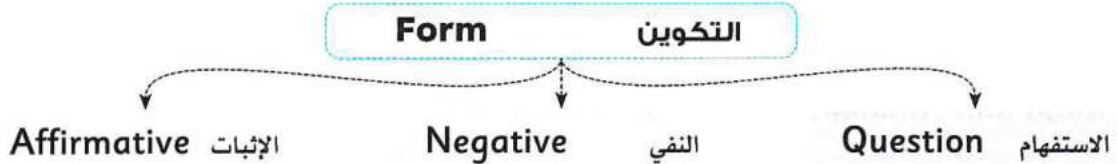
Language in use

Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use the present perfect to talk about:
 - actions that started in the past and continue now.
 - things that happened recently with results we can see today.
- نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن:
- أفعال بدأت في الماضي وتستمر الآن.
 - أشياء حدثت مؤخرًا بنتائج يمكننا رؤيتها اليوم.



I. Affirmative



I, You, We, They,
Plural noun (اسم جمع) + **have ('ve)**

He, She, It,
Singular noun (اسم مفرد) + **has ('s)** + past participle (P.P.) ...
(التصريف الثالث للفعل)

- To form the past participle:

(A) Regular verbs

الأفعال المنتظمة

verb + **-ed**

لمعظم الأفعال.

Ex: - clean → **cleaned**

verb + **-d**

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (-e).

Ex: - restore → **restored**

verb + **-ied**

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (-y) وقبله حرف ساكن.

Ex: - cry → **cried**

Ex: - Experts **have** **restored** the temple.



- She's already **cleaned** her room.



**(B) Irregular verbs**

الأفعال غير المنتظمة

- Irregular verbs have special past participle forms. They change in different ways.

• الأفعال غير المنتظمة لها صيغة ثالثة خاصة. تتغير بطرق مختلفة.

Ex: – go → **gone**– write → **written**– build → **built**Ex: – Hadi **has** **written** a letter to his friend.**2. Negative**I, You, We, They,
Plural noun**have not (haven't)**

+

+

past participle
(P.P.) ...He, She, It
Singular noun**has not (hasn't)**Ex: – Many tourists **have not** visited Dakka.– Hala **hasn't** gone to school today. She is sick.**Yes/No question** السؤال بـ (هل)**3. Question****Have**

+

I, you, we, they, plural noun

+

past participle
(P.P.) ...?**Has**

he, she, it, singular noun

Ex: – **Have** visitors
liked the
carvings?– **Has** the team
finished their work
successfully?**Key words** الكلمات الدالة

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| • already | بالفعل | • recently | مؤخرًا |
| • this (morning) | هذا (الصباح) | • today | اليوم |
| • just | للتو/حالا | • before | من قبل |
| • for + a period of time | لمدة + مدة زمنية | • since + a starting point | منذ + بداية الحدث |

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We visited the tomb of Petosiris.
a. are b. has c. have d. do
- 2 I have a new logo for my products.
a. designed b. designing c. designs d. design
- 3 He eaten too many sweets. His tooth hurts.
a. has b. is c. hasn't d. have
- 4 scientists discovered a new plant in the desert?
a. Are b. Did c. Have d. Has
- 5 Our team won any matches for a long time.
a. isn't b. hasn't c. doesn't d. didn't
- 6 They have their school project recently.
a. complete b. completed c. completing d. completes
- 7 Has Maged three chapters of his book?
a. to read b. reading c. reads d. read
- 8 My sister a vase this week.
a. have broken b. has broken
c. is broken d. haven't broken

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 My dad has (drive) too fast on the road.
- 2 (Has) archaeologists found old tools near the pyramids?
- 3 Kareem (haven't) painted his new portrait.
- 4 (Have) the engineer used modern machines at the site?
- 5 The students (has) already finished the presentation.
- 6 The guards (not open) the main gate today. It's closed.
- 7 Maha and Nour (live) here since last year.
- 8 Have the plumbers fixed the faucet? – No, they (have).

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In Luxor, on the east side of the River Nile, stands the magnificent Karnak Temple. It is one of Egypt's most famous ancient temples. It was built more than two thousand years ago. It was for the god Amun-Ra. The temple is filled with huge columns, tall statues, and carvings. These carvings tell stories of different kings and gods. Every part of Karnak Temple shows the skill of the ancient Egyptians. People still visit it today because they like it so much. They all still imagine how it looked when priests and rulers gathered there.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The text is about an ancient
 a. house b. pyramid c. temple d. treasure
- The underlined word "magnificent" means ".....".
 a. bad b. ancient c. wonderful d. busy

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- Where is the Karnak Temple?

- What do the carvings on the temple tell?

- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- The experts haven't (see) this kind of statue before.
- (Is) he restored the mummy in the new tomb? – Yes, he has.



Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



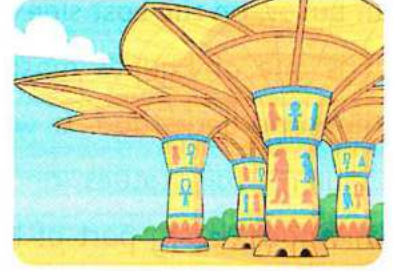
tour guide

مرشد سياحي



craftsman

جَزَفي



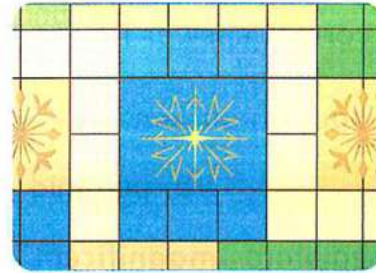
design

تصميم



discover

يكتشف



pattern

نمط

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

village	قرية	workers	عَمَال	artists	فَنَّاوَن
valley	وَادٍ	anything	أَي شَيْء	drawings	رَسُوْمَات
notes	مُلَاحَظَات	pieces	قِطْع	pottery	خَزَف / فَخَار
kind	نوع	notebook	دَفْتَر مُلَاحَظَات	homes	مَنَازِل / بِيُوْت
ancient Egypt	مِصر القَدِيْمَة	tour guide	مُرْشِد سِيَاْحِي	the Valley of the Kings	وَادِي المُلُوك

Adjectives الصفات

royal	مَلَكِي	skilled	مَاهِر	daily	يَوْمِي
-------	---------	---------	--------	-------	---------

**Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
paint	يرسم/ يدهن	painted		painting	المتصرف الثالث
carve	ينحت	carved		carving	
notice	يلاحظ	noticed		noticing	
decorate	يزين	decorated		decorating	
live	يعيش	lived		living	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
understand	يفهم	understood		understanding	
hear	يسمع	heard		hearing	
see	يرى	saw		seen	
say	يقول	said		saying	

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

sound like	يبدو مثل	said the same	قال الشيء نفسه
thousands of years ago	منذ آلاف السنين	help us understand	يساعدنا على فهم
Exactly!	بالضبط!	on the walls	على الحوائط

Definitions تعريفات

craftsman	جرفي	a person who builds or makes things skillfully	الشخص الذي يبني أو يصنع الأشياء بمهارة
discover	يكشف	to find something that was lost or unknown	أن يعثر على شيء ما كان مفقودًا أو غير معروف



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Tour Guide: Welcome to Deir el-Medina, the ancient village where the craftsmen who built the royal tombs once lived. Have you ever heard about this place before?



مرحبًا بك في دير المدينة، القرية القديمة التي عاش فيها سابقًا الحرفيون الذين بنوا المقابر الملكية. هل سبق لك أن سمعت عن هذا المكان من قبل؟

Tourist : No, I haven't. Who lived here?

لا، لم أسمع. من عاش هنا؟

Tour Guide: Skilled workers and artists have lived here with their families. They have painted and carved the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings.

عاش هنا عمّال وفنّانون مهرة مع عائلاتهم. رسموا وحفروا مقابر الملوك في وادي الملوك.

Tourist : Have archaeologists discovered anything interesting in their houses?

هل اكتشف علماء الآثار أي شيء مثير للاهتمام في منازلهم؟

Tour Guide: Yes, they have. They've discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.

نعم، اكتشفوا. لقد اكتشفوا رسومات وملاحظات على قطع من الخزف.

Tourist : That sounds like the first kind of notebook!

يبدو هذا أول نوع من دفتر الملاحظات!

Tour Guide: Exactly! Have you noticed the patterns on the walls? They show how the workers decorated their homes.

بالضبط! هل لاحظت الأنماط على الجدران؟ إنها تبين كيف رتّب العمال منازلهم.

Tourist : It's wonderful to see how artists lived thousands of years ago.

من الرائع أن أرى كيف عاش الفنّانون منذ آلاف السنين.

Tour Guide: Many visitors have said the same. Deir el-Medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

كثير من الزوار قالوا الشيء نفسه. دير المدينة يساعدنا على فهم الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 A/An is a person who builds or makes things skillfully.
a. craftsman b. expert c. archaeologist d. researcher
- 2 The students made a for a poster for their school.
a. tomb b. temple c. design d. king
- 3 Scientists new animals in the ocean every year.
a. carve b. discover c. live d. stand
- 4 The carpet has a beautiful red and gold
a. life b. face c. notebook d. pattern

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

pottery – built – skilled – ancient – tour guide

We went to Luxor last month. The ⁽¹⁾..... showed us many ancient temples there. He told us interesting stories about ⁽²⁾..... Egypt. He took us to an ancient village called Deir el-Medina. It is where the artists and ⁽³⁾..... workers of ancient Egypt lived. In the houses of this village, archaeologists discovered drawings and notes on pieces of ⁽⁴⁾.....

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- have you ever heard about this place before

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Who lived in Deir el-Medina?

- 2 How does Deir el-Medina help us?

B Pronunciation

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Word Building: -ify/-er

- A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word to change its meaning or form. • اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الحروف المضافة إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو شكلها.
- The suffix “-ify” means “to make” or “to cause to become”. • اللاحقة “-ify” تعني «يجعل» أو «يتسبب في أن يصبح».
- We add “-ify” to nouns or adjectives to form verbs. • نضيف “-ify” إلى الأسماء أو الصفات لتكوين الأفعال.
- The suffix “-er” means someone who performs an action. • اللاحقة “-er” تعني شخصاً ما يقوم بعمل ما.

Base Word الكلمة الأساسية		+ -ify/-er		Meaning المعنى
simple	بسيط	simplify	يُبسِّط	to make something simple أن يجعل شيئاً ما بسيطاً
pure	نقي	purify	يُنقِّي	to make clean or pure أن يجعل شيئاً ما نظيفاً أو نقياً
clear	واضح	clarify	يُوضِّح	to make something clear أن يجعل شيئاً ما واضحاً
drive	يقود	driver	قائد/سائق	someone who drives شخص ما يقود
bake	يخبز	baker	خباز	someone who bakes شخص ما يخبز
teach	يُعَلِّم/يُدْرَس	teacher	معلِّم/مدرِّس	someone who teaches شخص ما يُدْرَس

Tryout



Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The bus (**drives – driver**) takes us to school.
- 2 The teacher uses pictures to (**simplify – simple**) the lessons.
- 3 The new machine (**purifies – electrifies**) water that comes from the river.

3. purifies

2. simplify

1. driver

Answers:

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Fayez. I'm in grade 6. My cousin Tarek is a tour guide. I asked him some questions for my history project. He told me about an ancient village called Kahun in Al-Fayoum. Skilled craftsmen and builders once lived there with their families. They helped design and build the pyramid of King Senusret the second. They also built nearby temples. At first, I didn't understand the importance of the village. But Tarek clarified that archaeologists found beautiful patterns on the walls of the houses. These patterns show how people lived and worked. These patterns help us learn more about the daily life in ancient Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The underlined pronoun "me" refers to
 a. Fayez b. history project c. tour guide d. Tarek
- The underlined word "clarified" means "made something".
 a. interesting b. clear c. hard d. beautiful

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- What did Tarek tell Fayez?

- What pyramid did skilled craftsmen and builders help design and build?

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين:

- My brother is a (bake). He makes delicious bread and cake.
- The (teaches) asked us to study well.



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

symbol	رمز	fossils	حفريات	skeletons	هياكل عظمية
meters	أمتار	details	تفاصيل	ocean	محيط
land animals	حيوانات برية	creatures	مخلوقات	importance	أهمية
explorer	مستكشف	trails	مسارات	generations	أجيال
itineraries	برامج سياحية	packages	باقات	resort	منتجع
young people	صغار السن	treasures	كنوز	carefully	بعناية
dream vacation	عطلة الأحلام	cruise bookings	حجوزات رحلات بحرية	guided tours	جولات سياحية بصحبة مرشدين
the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	the Valley of the Whales	وادي الحيتان		

Adjectives الصفات

magnificent	عظيم	incredible	مذهل/لا يُصدق	scientific	علمي
historical	تاريخي	exclusive	حصري	tailored	مُخصَّصة/مُفضَّلة
remarkable	مميز/ملحوظ	personalized	مُخصَّصة	unforgettable	لا يُنسى
natural	طبيعي	rich	غني		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
discover	discovered	discovered
protect	protected	protected
remind	reminded	reminded
appreciate	appreciated	appreciated
ensure	ensured	ensured
plan	planned	planned
offer	offered	offered



Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
swim يسبح	swam	swum
find يجد	found	found
tell يخبر	told	told
know يعرف	knew	known

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

deep in في عمق	covered by مغطى بـ
hundreds of مئات من	tell a story يحكي قصة
changed from ... into ... تحول من ... إلى ...	place called مكان يُسمَّى
a world heritage site موقع تراث عالمي	walk along يسير بمحاذاة/بجانب
with ease بكل سهولة	remain safe يبقى آمناً
feel proud of يشعر بالفخر بـ	feel like يبدو وكأن
a place of science مكان للعلم	welcome to مرحباً بكم في

Note

- We use "because of + noun" to show the reason.

• نستخدم "because of" بمعنى «بسبب» متبوعة بـ «اسم» لإظهار السبب.

Ex: – Because of its scientific and historical importance, Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site.

- We use "not just" to show there is more information about something.

• نستخدم "not just" بمعنى «ليس فقط» لإظهار أن هناك معلومات أكثر عن شيء ما.

Ex: – Wadi El-Hitan is not just a place of science, it is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history.



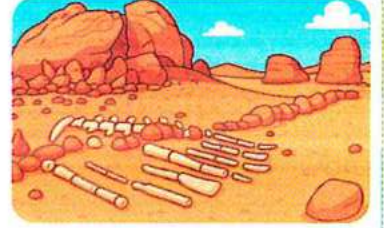
Look and read:

انظروا اقرأ:

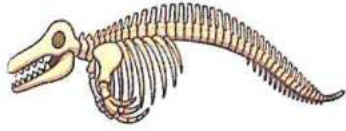
Wadi El-Hitan: Egypt's Valley of the Whales**وادي الحيتان: وادي الحيتان بمصر**

Posted on March 15, 2025

By Salma, Student Explorer



Deep in the Western Desert, there is a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a very big ocean. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam here.



Some of these skeletons are longer than 15 meters, showing incredible details of their bones. These fossils tell a remarkable story about how whales changed from land animals into the magnificent ocean creatures we know today.

Because of its scientific and historical importance, Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site. Visitors can walk along the desert trails and see the fossils lying exactly where they were found. It feels like visiting a natural museum, where every fossil tells a story. Egypt has protected this area carefully to ensure the fossils remain safe for future generations. Wadi El-Hitan is not just a place of science, it is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history, reminding young people to appreciate and feel proud of their country's treasures.

نُشر في 15 مارس 2025

بواسطة سلمى، طالبة مستكشفة

في عمق الصحراء الغربية، يوجد مكان ساحر يُسمى وادي الحيتان. منذ ملايين السنين، كانت هذه المنطقة مغطاة بمحيط كبير جدًا. اكتشف علماء الآثار مئات الحفريات لحيتان قديمة كانت تسبح هنا ذات مرة. يبلغ طول بعض هذه الهياكل العظمية أكثر من 15 مترًا، وتُظهر تفاصيل مذهلة لعظامها. تروي هذه الحفريات قصة رائعة عن كيفية تحوّل الحيتان من كائنات برية إلى مخلوقات محيطية رائعة نعرفها اليوم. بسبب أهميته العلمية والتاريخية، أصبح وادي الحيتان موقعًا تراثيًا عالميًا. يمكن للزوار السير بمحاذاة مسارات الصحراء ومشاهدة الحفريات في المكان الذي تم العثور عليها فيه بالضبط. يبدو الأمر وكأنك تزور متحفًا طبيعيًا، حيث تحكي كل حفرة قصة مميزة. قامت مصر بحماية هذه المنطقة بعناية لضمان بقاء الحفريات آمنة للأجيال القادمة. وادي الحيتان ليس مجرد مكان للعلم، بل هو رمز لتاريخ مصر الطبيعي الغني، يذكّر الشباب بتقدير كنوز بلدهم والشعور بالفخر بها.



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ و لاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing a blog

نصائح لكتابة مدونة



- Start with a title that catches attention. ابدأ بعنوان يجذب الانتباه.
Ex: Wadi El-Hitan: Egypt's Valley of the Whales
- Write the date and your name. اكتب التاريخ واسمك.
Ex: Posted on March 15, 2025
By Salma, Student Explorer
- Use paragraphs to organize your ideas. استخدم الفقرات لتنظيم أفكارك.
- Describe the place or event clearly. صف المكان أو الحدث بوضوح.
Ex: deep in the Western Desert – a magical place – covered by a very big ocean
– skeletons longer than 15 meters
- Share your feelings or opinion. شارك مشاعرك أو رأيك.
Ex: It feels like visiting a natural museum.
- End with a take home message. اختتم برسالة استخلاصية.
Ex: reminding young people to appreciate and feel proud of their country's
treasures

Tryout



Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- How long are some of ancient whales' skeletons?
a. Longer than 55 meters. b. Longer than 15 meters.
- Why has Egypt protected the area of Wadi El-Hitan?
a. To ensure the fossils remain safe for future generations.
b. To earn money from visitors who visit the area.

2. (a)

1. (b)

Answers:



Unit 3

Hidden Gems of Egypt 2nd term



Look and read:

انظروا اقرأ:

Project: Egypt's Hidden Wonders Tour

مشروع: جولة عجائب مصر الخفية

picture/drawing

صورة/رسم



About Our Company

Discover the world with ease. We offer personalized itineraries, guided tours, cruise bookings, and exclusive resort packages tailored to your dream vacation.

عن شركتنا

اكتشف العالم بسهولة. نقدم برامج رحلات شخصية، جولات سياحية بصحبة مرشدين، حجوزات رحلات بحرية، وباقات منتجعات حصريّة مصممة خصيصاً لعطلة أحلامك.

about the place

عن المكان

travel information

معلومات عن السفر



Get in Touch

تواصل معنا

Mobile:

الهاتف المحمول:

+1 (555) 123:667

Email:

البريد الإلكتروني:

info@starstravel.com

Website:

الموقع الإلكتروني:

www.starstravel.com

Social:

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي:

@starstravel



title

عنوان

slogan

شعار



Welcome to Stars
Travel & Tours

Plan your unforgettable
journey with us

مرحباً بكم في شركة ستارز للسفر والسياحة

خطط لرحلتك التي لا تُنسى معنا



Tips for creating a travel brochure

نصائح لإعداد نشرة سفر



- Write a title and a slogan. اكتب عنواناً وشعاراً.
- Write about the place. Write 3–4 sentences about where it is and why it's special. اكتب عن المكان. اكتب 3–4 جمل عن أين هو ولماذا هو مميز.
- Write what you can see or do. Use bullet points or short sentences. اكتب ما يمكنك رؤيته أو فعله. استخدم نقاطاً أو جملًا قصيرة.
- Write a visitor comment. Write what a visitor might say about their experience. اكتب تعليق زائر. اكتب ما قد يقوله الزائر عن تجربته.
- Include travel information:
- Location / How to get there / Best time to visit / What to bring
ضمّن معلومات السفر:
- الموقع/كيفية الوصول إلى هناك/أفضل وقت للزيارة/ماذا تُحضر
- Add a picture or drawing. أضف صورة أو رسمًا.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The blue whale lives in the and eats fish.
a. forest b. ocean c. cave d. desert
- 2 The company helps you spend the best summer
a. vacation b. museum c. website d. ease
- 3 Always people who help you every day.
a. fight b. ignore c. appreciate d. blame
- 4 We followed the walking in the park to reach the lake.
a. walls b. trails c. doors d. mirrors

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

tell – safe – step – skeletons – symbol

Gebel Qatrani is a famous area in Egypt's Western Desert. It's known for its ancient discoveries. Scientists found many animal ⁽¹⁾ there, including early elephants and monkeys that lived long ago. These amazing fossils ⁽²⁾ us about life millions of years ago. Today, the site is a ⁽³⁾ of Egypt's rich natural history. We must make sure it remains ⁽⁴⁾ for the future.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- 1 with – world – Discover – ease – with us. – the
.....
- 2 has – become – site. – heritage – a world – Wadi El-Hitan
.....

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- Egypt has protected wadi El-Hitan for years

5 Write a blog of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب مدونة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"Your visit to a hidden Egyptian place"

- What is the name and location of this place? • What did you see there?

Unit 3 Review

Vocabulary

burial	دَفْن	archaeologist	عالم آثار	mummy	مومياء
discovery	اكتشاف	chamber	غرفة	mystery	لغز
corridors	ممرات	heritage	تراث	temple	معبد
ruler	حاكم	monument	أثر	border	حدود
pottery	خزف/ فخار	cultures	ثقافات	emperors	أباطرة
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	craftsman	جِرْفِي	design	تصميم
discover	يكتشف	pattern	نمط	skeletons	هياكل عظمية
trails	مسارات	restore	يرمّم	fossils	حفريات
the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	cruise bookings	حجوزات رحلات بحرية	the Valley of the Whales	وادي الحيتان

Language

Present Perfect Tense

- We use the present perfect to talk about: (actions that started in the past and continue now / things that happened recently with results we can see today).
- نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن: (أفعال بدأت في الماضي وتستمر الآن/ أشياء حدثت مؤخرًا بنتائج يمكننا رؤيتها اليوم).

Affirmative



I, You, We, They, Plural noun + **have ('ve)**

+ P.P. ...

He, She, It, Singular noun + **has ('s)**

Ex: – Experts **have restored** the temple.

Negative



I, You, We, They, Plural noun + **have not (haven't)**

+ P.P. ...

He, She, It, Singular noun + **has not (hasn't)**

Ex: – Hala **hasn't gone** to school today. She is sick.

Question



Have + I, you, we, they, plural noun

+ P.P. ...?

Has + he, she, it, singular noun

Ex: – **Have** visitors liked the carvings?



Reading & Conversation in Points

Lesson 1

The Enchanting Tuna el-Gebel

- Tuna el-Gebel near Minya is a mysterious burial site.

تونة الجبل قرب المنيا هي موقع دُفِنَ غامض.

- The site has underground chambers and long corridors with ancient art.

يحتوي الموقع على غرف تحت الأرض وممرات طويلة بها فنون قديمة.

- Researchers discovered hundreds of animal mummies.

اكتشف الباحثون مئات من مومياوات الحيوانات.

- The tomb of Petosiris has walls covered with beautiful carvings.

مقبرة بيتوسيريس بها جدران مغطاة بنقوش جميلة.

- It makes people feel like they have traveled back in time.

تجعل الناس يشعرون كأنهم انتقلوا بالزمن إلى الماضي.

Lesson 2

The Temple of Dakka

- The Temple of Dakka is in Nubia, near Egypt's southern border.

يقع معبد الدكة في النوبة، بالقرب من الحدود الجنوبية لمصر.

- It was built for Thoth, the god of wisdom.

تم بناؤه لتحت، إله الحكمة.

- Later, Greek and Roman emperors added new walls and carvings to the temple.

لاحقًا، أضاف الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومانيون جدرانًا ونقوشًا جديدة إلى المعبد.

- When the High Dam was built, Egyptian experts moved the temple to higher ground to keep it safe.

عندما تم بناء السد العالي، نقل الخبراء المصريون المعبد إلى أرض أكثر ارتفاعًا للبقاء آمنة.

Lesson 3 (A)

Discovering Deir el-Medina

- Deir el-Medina was home to the workers and artists who built the royal tombs.

كانت دير المدينة موطنًا للعُمَّال والفنانين الذين بنوا المقابر الملكية.

- Archaeologists found drawings and notes on pottery showing their life and work.

وجد علماء الآثار رسومات وملاحظات على الخزف تبين حياتهم وعملهم.

- The village helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

تساعدنا القرية على فهم الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.

Lessons 4&5

The Valley of the Whales (Wadi El-Hitan)/Think and Create

- Wadi El-Hitan is in the Western Desert and was once covered by an ocean.

يقع وادي الحيتان في الصحراء الغربية وكان مغطى ذات مرة بمحيط.

- Fossils of ancient whales were found there, showing how whales changed over time.

تم العثور على حفريات لحيتان قديمة هناك، مما يدل على كيفية تغير الحيتان مع مرور الوقت.

- The site is now a world heritage area protected by Egypt.

الموقع الآن منطقة تراث عالمي تحميها مصر.

- Wadi El-Hitan is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history.

وادي الحيتان رمز لتاريخ مصر الطبيعي الغني.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

.....	دَفْن	.....	عالم آثار
.....	موميا	.....	اكتشاف
.....	غرفة	.....	لغز
.....	ممرات	.....	أنماط
.....	تراث	.....	نقوش
.....	كبير الكهنة	.....	لا يُنسى

Lesson (2)

.....	معبد	.....	حاكم
.....	أثر	.....	حدود
.....	يُرْمَم	.....	خبراء
.....	تقاليد	.....	إله الحكمة
.....	بوابات	.....	حكمة
.....	أباطرة	.....	مسالم/هادئ

Lesson (3)

.....	مرشد سياحي	.....	جَزْفِي
.....	تصميم	.....	يكتشف
.....	نمط	.....	فَنَّاوَن
.....	خزف/فخار	.....	ملاحظات
.....	مَلِكِي	.....	ماهر

Lessons (4&5)

.....	حفريات	.....	هياكل عظمية
.....	حصري	.....	رائع
.....	رمز	.....	مخلوقات
.....	برامج سياحية	.....	أجبال



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	P.P.	Present	Past	P.P.
amaze			carve		
lie			hear		
create			notice		
preserve			see		
make			decorate		
fascinate			walk		
show			stand		
feel			protect		
tell			swim		
design			discover		
raise			remind		
add			become		
build			offer		
respect			appreciate		
shine			ensure		
restore			know		
paint			plan		
understand			continue		



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Tuna el-Gebel”

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. desert 2. mummies 3. visitors

Verbs

1. has 2. find 3. walk

Others

1. ancient 2. underground 3. around

2 Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكلمة الجملة)

1. Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient place in the desert near Minya.
2. It has long corridors and old chambers underground.
3. Many animal mummies were found there.
4. Visitors can walk around the site.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient place in the desert near Minya. It has long corridors and old chambers underground. Many animal mummies were found there. The walls have beautiful carvings and colorful scenes of ancient life. Visitors can walk around the site. They feel like they have traveled back in time. They feel proud of Egypt's long and wonderful history.

Write it yourself!

اكتب بنفسك!

“Wadi El-Hitan”

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences

1. 2.
3. 4.

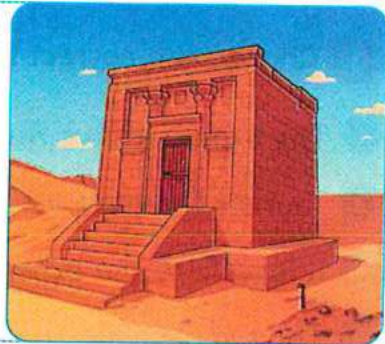
Your paragraph فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

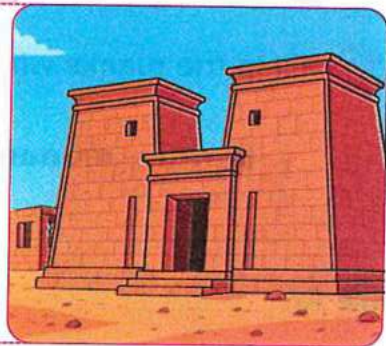
Tuna el-Gebel

Tuna el-Gebel is in the desert near Minya. It is an ancient burial place with long corridors and underground rooms. Many animal mummies were found there, especially birds. In the middle is the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings. The art and carvings on its walls make people feel proud of Egypt's history.



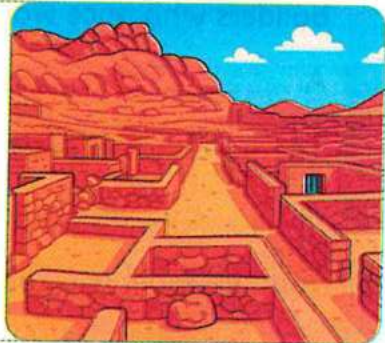
The Temple of Dakka

The Temple of Dakka is in Nubia. It is a very old temple built for Thoth, the god of wisdom. Many rulers helped build it. Later, Greek and Roman emperors added new walls and carvings. When the High Dam was built, it raised the water level. So, experts moved the temple to higher ground. Today, visitors enjoy visiting the temple.



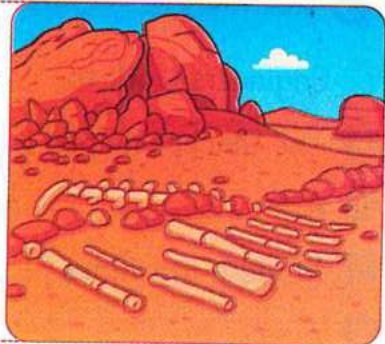
Deir el-Medina

Deir el-Medina was an ancient village for workers and artists who built the royal tombs. They lived with their families and decorated the tombs of the kings with carvings and paintings. Archaeologists found drawings and notes on pottery pieces there. They show how the workers decorated their homes. Deir el-Medina helps people understand daily life in ancient Egypt.



Wadi El-Hitan

Wadi El-Hitan is in the Western Desert. Millions of years ago, it was covered by a big ocean. Archaeologists found many whale fossils there. Some skeletons are more than 15 meters long. Visitors can see the fossils in the desert. Because the area has a scientific importance, Egypt has protected it. The place shows Egypt's rich natural history and treasures.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Choose the correct form:

اختر الصيغة الصحيحة:

- 1 The experts (have moved/moved) the temple to higher ground.
- 2 Tourists (haven't visited/don't visit) the Temple of Dakka often.
- 3 (Have/Did) the experts restored the temple carefully?
- 4 The temple (has stood/stood) in Nubia for hundreds of years.
- 5 (Has/Did) the team finished their work successfully?

2 Fill in the blanks with words from the box:

املأ الفراغات بكلمات من الصندوق:

burial – monument – archaeologist – discovery – restore –
mummy – chamber

- 1 An studies ancient objects and sites.
- 2 The near the Temple of Dakka was built to honor the ancient builders who once worked there.
- 3 A is a room where people were buried in ancient Egypt.
- 4 The new of mummies made scientists very excited.
- 5 A is a preserved body from ancient times.
- 6 Tuna el-Gebel is a famous site near Minya.
- 7 The experts worked hard to the old temple.

3 Use the correct form of the word in brackets: استخدم الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة بين قوسين:

- 1 Engineers work to the water before it reaches our homes. (pure)
- 2 The teacher helped the new rule for the students. (clear)
- 3 A helps students learn. (teach)
- 4 Modern machines work and save time. (simple)
- 5 A makes fresh bread and cakes. (bake)

Test on unit (3)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Wadi El-Hitan is near Al-Fayoum. ()
2. The area was covered by a big lake millions of years ago. ()
3. Archaeologists found skins of old whales in the sand there. ()
4. Now, the place is a protected natural area in Egypt. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Queen Hatshepsut was a great in ancient Egypt.
a. farmer b. ruler c. artist d. teacher
2. A is a special room inside a tomb.
a. burial b. monument c. mummy d. chamber
3. My friend's father is a He drives an old truck.
a. drive b. driver c. drove d. driven
4. Sally and Nadine read three books this week.
a. have b. has c. having d. are



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

preserved – styles – walk – time – discoveries

Tuna el-Gebel is an important site that shows Egypt's long history. Scientists make many ⁽¹⁾ there. People long ago chose this place as a burial area for both humans and animals, especially ⁽²⁾ birds. When people ⁽³⁾ through Tuna el-Gebel, they feel like they have traveled back in ⁽⁴⁾ The quiet desert, the old carvings, and the feeling of history make the place special and hard to forget.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Tell el-Amarna is an ancient place in Minya, Egypt. It was built by King Akhenaten more than three thousand years ago. He made it the new capital of Egypt and called it Akhetaten. Many craftsmen and artists lived there with their families. They built temples and decorated tombs for the royal family. Archaeologists have found houses, tools, and drawings that show daily life in ancient Egypt. Today, visitors can walk around the site and see the old walls and tombs. Tell el-Amarna helps them learn about the history of our country.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about
a. Deir el-Medina b. Tuna el-Gebel
c. Tell el-Dabaa d. Tell el-Amarna
- The underlined adjective "ancient" is the opposite of ".....".
a. different b. modern c. old d. remarkable

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. When was Tell el-Amarna built?

.....

4. Why did King Akhenaten build Tell el-Amarna?

.....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Plants help (pure) the air. They are very important.
2. Has Nour (saw) the movie about ancient Egypt before?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. the god – The Temple of Dakka – built – for – was – of wisdom.

2. can – trails. – the desert – along – Visitors – walk

7 Punctuate the following:

1. plan your unforgettable journey with us
2. have you noticed the patterns on the walls

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“An ancient Egyptian monument”

(the Temple of Dakka – carvings)

(A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

border – craftsmen – patterns – restored – tour guide – noticed

Mona : It's amazing to be here, Afaf. Who is that man speaking near the tombs?

Afaf : He's the ⁽¹⁾ He tells visitors about the history of this place.

Mona : So the ⁽²⁾ built these tombs for the kings, right?

Afaf : Yes, and they also drew beautiful ⁽³⁾ on the walls.

Mona : I've just ⁽⁴⁾ the colors on that wall. They are so beautiful!

Afaf : Yes, experts have ⁽⁵⁾ the place carefully to keep the old paintings safe.

(B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Have they (build) this large house?
2. He asked the guide to (clear) the directions before starting the trip.
3. My sister (haven't) gone to the club. She is tired.
4. The (teach) gave her students extra time to finish their homework.
5. My dad has (gave) me a new laptop.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. A talented engineer the new museum three years ago.
a. walked b. went c. told d. designed
2. of ancient Egypt built many great temples.
a. Oceans b. Rulers c. Carvings d. Pyramids
3. Archaeologists found a/an of an ancient animal deep in the desert.
a. sea b. ocean c. skeleton d. temple
4. Archaeologists always new fossils in the desert.
a. raise b. shine c. feel d. discover



5. The Pyramids of Giza are a famous in Egypt.
a. monument b. city c. village d. country
6. I visited the museum twice this year.
a. am b. was c. do d. have
7. Has Hana her homework?
a. finish b. finishes c. finishing d. finished
8. They watched the new movie at the cinema. They haven't gone there.
a. have b. hasn't c. haven't d. has
9. The makes fresh bread every morning for the whole neighborhood.
a. baker b. bake c. baking d. bakes
10. He has a beautiful drawing for the school art show.
a. make b. made c. makes d. making

(C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. simplify – purify – unforgettable – stand (.....)
2. magical – skeleton – exclusive – remarkable (.....)
3. drawings – built – notes – notebooks (.....)
4. river – desert – burial site – bird (.....)
5. proud – softly – carefully – successfully (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I like reading about history. I have read about the Abu Simbel Temples. They are in southern Egypt. They are remarkable. They were built by King Ramses the second thousands of years ago. The temples are carved into a huge rock cliff, with four giant statues of the king sitting proudly at the entrance. Inside, the walls show colorful scenes of battles and gods. Twice a year, sunlight enters the main temple and shines on the statues, a design that amazes scientists today. The Abu Simbel Temples are a symbol of Egypt's rich history.



(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The Abu Simbel Temples are in southern Egypt. ()
2. They were built by King Khufu. ()
3. The temples' walls show colorful scenes of battles. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4. There are statues of King Ramses the second at the entrance of the Abu Simbel Temples.
a. four b. two c. six d. three
5. The underlined adjective "remarkable" means ".....".
a. small b. bad c. amazing d. short

(D) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences:

"An important ancient site"

(Tuna el-Gebel – archaeologists – discovery – mummies – walls)

Review 1

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 1 Celebrating Creativity



whisper



canvas



paintbrush



carve



sculpture



palette



masterpiece



art gallery

Unit 2 Wonderful Inventions



invention



gadgets



blueprint



tools



assemble



improve

Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt



burial



archaeologist



mummy



discovery



chamber



mystery

Language Summary

Unit 1 Celebrating Creativity

Conjunction Pairs

- Conjunction pairs are pairs of words that come together to connect two equal words or phrases in a sentence.

either...or

- We can use **either...or** to talk about a choice between two things.

Ex: – We can choose **either** a sculpture **or** a painting for our art project.

neither...nor

- We use **neither...nor** to say that two things are not true.

Ex: – The shop is **neither** small **nor** crowded. It's very good.

both...and

- We use **both...and** to say that two things are true at the same time.

Ex: – I like visiting **both** museums **and** art galleries.

Unit 2 Wonderful Inventions

Relative Pronouns

- Relative pronouns are words that join two sentences together.

who is used for people – the person doing an action.

Ex: – The farmer **who** grows crops is clever.

whose is used to show possession.

Ex: – The child **whose** pen is broken is sad.

which is used for things and animals.

Ex: – The Egyptian loom **which** was made from wood showed creativity.

**that**

is used for things and ideas. It adds information that is important.

Ex: – The dam **that** I visited was big.

Unit 3 Hidden Gems of Egypt

Present Perfect Tense

- We use the present perfect to talk about:
 - actions that started in the past and continue now.
 - things that happened recently with results we can see today.

Affirmative



I, You, We, They, Plural noun + **have ('ve)**

+ P.P. ...

He, She, It, Singular noun + **has ('s)**

- Ex:** – All the students **have written** their names on the paper.
– She **has studied** hard for the exam.

Negative



I, You, We, They, Plural noun + **have not (haven't)**

+ P.P. ...

He, She, It, Singular noun + **has not (hasn't)**

- Ex:** – They **have not gone** to the club.
– Hana **hasn't started** her homework.

Question



Have + I, you, we, they, plural noun

+ P.P. ...?

Has + he, she, it, singular noun

- Ex:** – **Has** the tourist **admired** the temple?
– **Have** you all **stood** in line?

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The Temple of Dakka is near Egypt's northern border. ()
2. Many rulers designed temples to worship gods. ()
3. Greek and Roman carvings showed disrespect for Egypt's traditions. ()
4. Experts moved stones to higher ground as the High Dam lowered the water level. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a person who is skilled in making things by hand.
 a. tour guide b. archaeologist c. visitor d. craftsman
2. My father is a carpenter. He works in a full of tools.
 a. dam b. school c. temple d. workshop
3. The trip will be either on Friday on Saturday.
 a. to b. and c. or d. nor
4. She the Temple of Dakka before.
 a. doesn't visit b. won't visit
 c. haven't visited d. hasn't visited

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

carve – designs – learn – inventions – clock

The ancient Egyptians were very smart and clever. They created an amazing invention called the water ⁽¹⁾ to tell the time. Before building it, engineers made careful ⁽²⁾ to show its shape and parts. They used special tools to ⁽³⁾ and assemble the stone pieces. The clock helped people plan their day and improve their work. This impressive idea was one of the earliest ⁽⁴⁾ in history.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last month, our class visited a small art museum to learn about famous Egyptian artists. The guide talked a lot about Mahmoud Mokhtar, the sculptor who created the well-known statue Nahdit Masr. The students were surprised to hear how long it took him to shape the woman and the sphinx from heavy stone. They also watched a short video that explained why the statue became a symbol of Egypt's **strength** and progress. In another hall, they saw drawings and photos showing Mokhtar's other work. At the end of the visit, everyone shared what they liked most about the artworks.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The talked to our class about Mahmoud Mokhtar.
a. teacher b. guide c. doctor d. farmer
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**strength**" is ".....".
a. weakness b. creativity c. talent d. imagination

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the general idea of the text?
.....

4. Why were the students surprised?
.....

5. What did everyone do at the end of the visit?
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. The tour guide (whose) we met in Aswan told us interesting facts.
2. Lara (have) finished her homework.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. see – mural? – beautiful – Did – the – you

.....

2. make – used – People – the loom – fabrics. – to

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. what do you know about Mahmoud Mokhtar

.....

2. Wadi El-hitan has become a world heritage site

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Your visit to an art gallery”

(statue – colorful)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 1

Test (2)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mahmoud Mokhtar was truly a talented Egyptian architect. ()
2. Nahdit Masr painting shows a woman and a sphinx. ()
3. His sculptures and artworks were collected later in a museum. ()
4. The museum doesn't include his tomb. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma is talented. Her art is
a. bad b. boring c. poor d. incredible
2. Mummies are dead bodies in special ways to last for thousands of years.
a. carved b. painted c. discovered d. preserved
3. I play tennis and football.
a. either b. neither c. both d. but
4. He became famous for his inventions, amazed many people.
a. who b. whose c. when d. which

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****whales – trails – ocean – valley – fossils**

I visited Wadi El-Hitan with my family last month. It is in the Western Desert. This area was covered by a very big ⁽¹⁾ millions of years ago. The place has hundreds of ⁽²⁾ of ancient ⁽³⁾ that swam there in the past. Some of these skeletons are very long. They're longer than 15 meters. Walking along the desert ⁽⁴⁾ is like stepping into a natural museum.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Cairo Tower is a tall, modern structure in the center of Egypt's capital, Cairo. It was built between 1956 and 1961 by Egyptian engineers. The tower was built to show Egypt's progress and to be a symbol of success. It is built of concrete, and it is about 187 meters high. From the top, people can see the whole city. The tower also has a restaurant and viewing area for visitors. Today, the Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt and a symbol of its modern life.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "progress" means "the process of getting at something".
a. better b. slower c. worse d. faster
2. The underlined pronoun "its" refers to
a. Egypt b. Cairo c. restaurant d. building

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the text mainly about?
.....

4. Why was the Cairo Tower built?
.....

5. Which material was used to build the Cairo Tower?
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I drink (either) milk nor juice.
2. Have you (write) the story?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. all over – famous – Europe. – clock – was – The
.....
2. noticed – Have – the patterns – you – the walls? – on
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Art is full of color feeling, and imagination
.....
2. How does the Aswan dam help Egypt
.....

8 Write an informal email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

Your name is Ali and your email address is (ali@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Nada and her email address is (nada@gmail.com).

“Your visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum”

- What did you see there?
- Who did you go with?

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The Aswan Dam was built to stop the Nile from flooding. ()
2. The Aswan Dam helps generate powerful energy. ()
3. The Aswan Dam helps protect the villages near the sea. ()
4. Farmers use the water that the dam keeps to grow crops in summer only. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To is to find something that was lost or unknown.
a. discover b. design c. notice d. see
2. The helped the ancient Egyptians make clothes and blankets.
a. clock b. pottery c. loom d. gear
3. Amira hasn't here today.
a. came b. come c. comes d. coming
4. I saw a cat tail is very long.
a. who b. which c. that d. whose

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

mask – workshops – café – statues – objects

Many visitors go to the Grand Egyptian Museum to learn about ancient Egypt. Inside the museum, they see tall ⁽¹⁾ of pharaohs and queens. A very famous item there is the golden ⁽²⁾ of King Tutankhamun, and many people stop to look at its beautiful details. Students also join fun ⁽³⁾ where they learn simple facts about old ⁽⁴⁾ and how experts keep them safe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I went to Tuna el-Gebel with my family. It's an amazing site combining Greek and Egyptian art. It is well-known for its underground chambers and long corridors, which are filled with ancient art. Archaeologists have found many interesting things there. For example, they discovered hundreds of animal mummies, especially preserved birds. There's a tomb in the middle of the site that belongs to a high priest from long ago. The tomb walls are decorated with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes that show both Egyptian and Greek styles. I am very proud of my country and its heritage.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "well-known" has the same meaning as ".....".
a. famous b. long c. beautiful d. amazing
2. The tomb are decorated with beautiful carvings.
a. doors b. floors c. windows d. walls

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is Tuna el-Gebel famous for?

.....

4. Mention one of the archaeologists' discoveries in Tuna el-Gebel.

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I bought a book (whose) explains how ancient clocks were designed.
2. She will buy either the blue dress (nor) the green one.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. anything – in – archaeologists – interesting – Have – discovered – their houses?
.....
2. called – ancient – The – an invention – created – the loom. – Egyptians
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. today, we have a talented engineer here
.....
2. have you ever heard about Deir el-Medina before
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“The Temple of Dakka”

(Nubia – carvings)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4

Unit

Egypt on the Move

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Use transportation and construction vocabulary in role-plays and discussions
- Ask and answer questions about Egypt's new projects and industries
- Compare Egypt's past and present using "used to/didn't use to" structures in spoken sentences
- Describe and present a modern Egyptian city or project clearly

• استخدام مفردات وسائل المواصلات والبناء في تبادل الأدوار والمناقشات
• السؤال والإجابة عن أسئلة حول المشاريع والصناعات الجديدة في مصر
• المقارنة بين ماضي مصر وحاضرها باستخدام تركيبات "used to / didn't use to" في الجمل المنطوقة
• وصف وتقديم مدينة أو مشروع مصري حديث بشكل واضح

Listening

- Understand the main ideas and specific details in short talks and interviews about transportation, industries, and Egypt's progress
- Follow short spoken instructions about travel, building, or city life
- Identify vocabulary in context while listening to information about modern Egypt
- Recognize key phrases and expressions related to innovation and development

• فهم الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل المحددة في المحادثات القصيرة والمقابلات عن وسائل المواصلات، الصناعات، وتقدم مصر
• اتباع تعليمات شفوية قصيرة متعلقة بالسفر، البناء، أو الحياة في المدينة
• تحديد مفردات في سياق أثناء الاستماع إلى معلومات حول مصر الحديثة
• التعرف على عبارات وتعبيرات رئيسية متعلقة بالابتكار والتطوير

Reading

- Read and understand informational texts about Egypt's new cities, roads, and industries
- Identify main ideas, supporting details, and sequence of events in texts
- Recognize and understand prefixes and suffixes (en-, -en) in context
- Make simple inferences about how development projects improve life in Egypt

• قراءة وفهم نصوص معلوماتية حول المدن الجديدة في مصر، الطرق، والصناعات
• تحديد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الداعمة وتسلسل الأحداث في النصوص
• التعرف على البادئات واللواحق (en-, -en) وفهمها في السياق
• التوصل إلى استنتاجات بسيطة حول كيفية تحسين مشاريع التنمية للحياة في مصر

Writing

- Write short paragraphs describing Egypt's progress, including past and present comparisons
- Use "used to/didn't use to" correctly in sentences about Egypt's changes
- Write a descriptive paragraph about a modern Egyptian city
- Create a simple flyer encouraging people to visit a famous place in Egypt

• كتابة فقرات قصيرة تصف تقدم مصر، بما في ذلك المقارنات بين الماضي والحاضر
• استخدام "used to / didn't use to" بشكل صحيح في جمل تتناول التغيرات التي شهدتها مصر
• كتابة فقرة وصفية عن مدينة مصرية حديثة
• إنشاء نشرة إعلانية بسيطة تشجع الناس على زيارة أحد الأماكن المشهورة في مصر

Lesson 1

Egypt's New Landscape

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



infrastructure

بنية تحتية



determination

عزيمة



highway

طريق سريع



innovation

ابتكار



extend

يمتد/يمد



goods

بضائع

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

road network	شبكة الطرق	engineers	مهندسون	people	ناس/شعب
services	خدمات	transportation	وسائل المواصلات	power supplies	إمدادات الطاقة
country	بلد	effectively	بطريقة فاعلة/بكفاءة	roads	طرق
work	عمل	bridges	جسور/كباري	progress	تقدم
tunnels	أنفاق	cities	مدن	nation	أمة
systems	أنظمة	economy	اقتصاد	well-being	رخاء/رفاهية
investment	استثمار	efforts	مجهودات	towards	باتجاه
parts	أجزاء	projects	مشاريع	the New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

Note

- The word "goods" has no singular form.

• كلمة "goods" ليس لها صيغة المفرد.

**Adjectives** الصفات

daily	يومي	narrow	ضيق	crowded	مزدحم
slow	بطيء	difficult	صعب	skilled	ماهر/بارع
modern	حديث/عصري	faster	أسرع	patient	صبور
connected	مترابط/متصل	new	جديد		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
improve	يُحسِّن/يطوِّر	improved		improved	
develop	يطوِّر	developed		developed	
connect	يربط/يوصِّل	connected		connected	
allow	يسمح	allowed		allowed	
use	يستخدم	used		used	
reach	يصل	reached		reached	
start	يبدأ	started		started	
transport	ينقل	transported		transported	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
make	يجعل/يصنع	made		made	
build	يبنى	built		built	
show	يُظهر/يبيِّن	showed		shown	
grow	ينمو	grew		grown	



Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

in recent years	في السنوات الأخيرة	in order to	لكي/بغرض
took a long time	استغرق وقتًا طويلًا	had to	اضطر أن
continue to	يواصل/يستمر في	bring ... closer	يُقرَّب
not only ... but also	ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضًا	in the past	في الماضي
along with	إلى جانب/بالإضافة لـ	prepared for	مستعد لـ

Definitions

تعريفات

infrastructure بنية تحتية	roads, bridges, and systems that help a country work الطرق، الجسور، والأنظمة التي تساعد بلدًا على العمل
determination عزيمة	a strong will to keep trying until you succeed إرادة قوية لمواصلة المحاولة حتى تنجح
innovation ابتكار	new and creative ideas or methods أفكار أو طرق جديدة ومبتكرة
extend يمتد/يمد	to make something larger or cover a wider area أن يجعل شيئًا ما أكبر أو يغطي مساحة أوسع

(Reading) main points

النقاط الأساسية في فقرة القراءة

- Egypt has started new infrastructure projects like roads, bridges, and tunnels.
بدأت مصر مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة مثل الطرق، الجسور، والأنفاق.
- In the past, roads were narrow and crowded. Traveling between cities was slow.
في الماضي، كانت الطرق ضيقة ومزدحمة. كان السفر بين المدن بطيئًا.
- Today, modern highways and bridges connect all parts of the country.
اليوم، الطرق السريعة والجسور الحديثة تربط جميع أنحاء البلاد.
- Projects like the New Administrative Capital show how the nation grows and develops.
تُظهر مشاريع مثل العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة كيف تنمو الأمة وتتطور.
- These projects improve daily life, the economy, and make the country more connected.
هذه المشاريع تحسّن الحياة اليومية، والاقتصاد، وتجعل البلاد أكثر ترابطًا.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Egypt has started new infrastructure projects in recent years. These are projects and services, such as transportation and power supplies, that the country uses in order to work effectively. In the past, roads were narrow, often crowded, and traveling between cities took a long time.



People had to be patient, and transporting goods was slow and difficult.

Today, skilled engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels that connect all parts of the country. These projects show Egypt's determination to extend its road network and improve daily life. The New Administrative Capital, along with the new bridges in Cairo, shows how the nation continues to grow and develop.

Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster, transport goods, and reach work and school more easily. Every new project not only improves Egypt's economy but also brings the country closer together, making it more connected and prepared for the future.

Egypt's investment in infrastructure shows its efforts towards projects to progress and the well-being of its people.

بدأت مصر تنفيذ مشروعات بنية تحتية جديدة في السنوات الأخيرة. هي مشروعات وخدمات تستعين بها البلاد لكي تعمل بكفاءة، مثل وسائل المواصلات وإمدادات الطاقة.

في الماضي، كانت الطرق ضيقة، وغالبًا مزدحمة، وكان السفر بين المدن يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا. اضطر الناس أن يكونوا صبورين، وكان نقل البضائع بطيئًا وصعبًا.

اليوم، يقوم المهندسون المهرة ببناء طرق سريعة حديثة وجسور وأنفاق تربط جميع أجزاء البلاد. تُظهر هذه المشروعات عزيمة مصر على مدّ شبكة الطرق وتحسين الحياة اليومية. تُظهر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة، إلى جانب الجسور الجديدة في القاهرة، كيف تستمر الأمة في النمو والتطور.

تسمح أنظمة وسائل المواصلات الحديثة للناس بالسفر بسرعة أكبر، ونقل البضائع، والوصول إلى العمل والمدارس بسهولة أكبر. كل مشروع جديد لا يُحسّن اقتصاد مصر فحسب، بل يُقَرِّب أجزاء البلاد من بعضها بعضًا، مما يجعلها أكثر ترابطًا واستعدادًا للمستقبل. يُظهر استثمار مصر في البنية التحتية جهودها تجاه مشاريع للتقدّم ورخاء شعبها.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Gamal transports different goods across Egypt. ()
- 2 He travels between cities every month. ()
- 3 The new highways, bridges, and tunnels connect places better. ()
- 4 These projects make his work more difficult. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Egypt's progress depends on science, technology, and
a. innovation b. chamber c. pollution d. ticket
- 2 Maged studied with great to achieve his goals.
a. link b. determination c. highway d. tunnel
- 3 The company made a large in new technology.
a. mystery b. fabric c. investment d. mural
- 4 Egypt continues to its roads to connect more cities.
a. attract b. express c. imagine d. extend
- 5 The bus was very, and there were no empty seats.
a. patient b. crowded c. strong d. skilled
- 6 The connects many cities together.
a. highway b. truck c. people d. work
- 7 Good helps people travel easily between cities.
a. escalator b. supply c. transportation d. blueprint
- 8 The tunnel is Two cars can't even pass through it!
a. narrow b. big c. giant d. huge

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

improving – smart – tunnels – progress – drawings

Egypt is achieving great progress through modern development and construction projects. These projects help the country work more effectively. New highways, ⁽¹⁾, and bridges now connect many cities across the country. Engineers and workers are ⁽²⁾ transportation and daily life for everyone. The New Administrative Capital and new bridges show Egypt's ⁽³⁾, and its dream of a ⁽⁴⁾ and organized future for everyone.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

1 project – Every – economy. – new – improves – Egypt's

2 goods – slow – difficult. – Transporting – was – and

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster

2 What does the New administrative Capital show

4 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

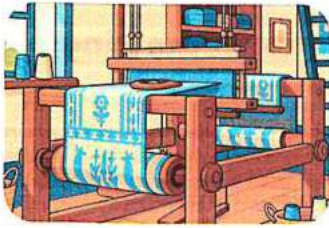
"Egypt's modern transportation system"

(project – develop)

Lesson 2 Building Egypt's Modern Economy

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



textile

منسوجات



manufacture

يصنع/تصنيع



power source

مصدر طاقة



steel industry

صناعة الصلب



industrial

صناعي



self-reliant

معتمد على الذات

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

Africa	أفريقيا	snacks	وجبات خفيفة	villages	قرى
farming	زراعة	jobs	وظائف	products	منتجات
factories	مصانع	machines	آلات/ماكينات	fabrics	أقمشة
greatly	بشكل كبير	Mahalla	المحلة (مدينة مصرية)	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
pasta	مكرونة	gas	غاز	teamwork	عمل جماعي
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	sources	مصادر	changes	تغييرات
millions	ملايين	hard work	العمل الجاد	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط

**Adjectives** الصفات

local	محلي	the strongest	الأقوى	different	مختلف
natural	طبيعي	fewer	أقل	high-quality	عالي الجودة
clean	نظيف	growing	متنام	Egyptian	مصري

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
change	يغيّر	changed		changed	
produce	ينتج	produced		produced	
create	يُنشئ/يبتكر	created		created	
help	يساعد	helped		helped	
exist	يبقى/يوجد	existed		existed	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
become	يصبح	became		become	
has/have	يمتلك/لديه	had		had	
get	يحصل	got		gotten	
find	يجد	found		found	

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

such as	مثل	light up	ينير
used to	اعتاد أن	proud of	فخور بـ
believe in	يؤمن بـ	contribute to	يساهم في
depend on	يعتمد على	grow stronger	يصبح أقوى



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, life was very different. People used to depend mainly on farming and small local jobs, and most villages didn't use to have factories or machines.



We used to get many products from other countries. Transportation used to be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities.

Today, Egypt has changed greatly. The textile industry in cities like Mahalla produces high-quality clothes and fabrics. These products are sold in Egypt and other countries. The food industry now manufactures many Egyptian products such as pasta, juice, and snacks. Egypt has also developed a strong steel industry, which helps build new roads, bridges, and houses.

New power sources such as natural gas, solar energy, and wind energy are being used to create clean power for homes and factories. These changes have made Egypt more modern and more self-reliant.

As the country builds new factories, more Egyptians find work and contribute to a growing economy. People today are proud of their country and how it is developing every day. Egypt's industries show how a nation can grow stronger when it believes in innovation, hard work, and teamwork. The factories that once didn't exist now light up the future for millions.

تصبح مصر واحدة من أقوى الدول الصناعية في أفريقيا والشرق الأوسط. في الماضي، كانت الحياة مختلفة جدًا. اعتمد الناس بشكل أساسي على الزراعة والوظائف الصغيرة المحلية، لم تكن معظم القرى تحتوي على مصانع أو آلات. اعتدنا أن نحصل على العديد من المنتجات من دول أخرى. وكانت وسائل المواصلات بطيئة، وكانت هناك فرص عمل أقل في المدن.

اليوم، تغيرت مصر بشكل كبير. صناعة النسيج في مدن مثل المحلة تنتج ملابس وأقمشة عالية الجودة. تُباع هذه المنتجات في مصر والدول الأخرى. تقوم صناعة المواد الغذائية الآن بصناعة العديد من المنتجات المصرية مثل المكرونة، العصير، والوجبات الخفيفة. تطورت مصر أيضًا صناعة صلب قوية تساعد في بناء طرق جديدة وجسور ومنازل.

يتم استخدام مصادر طاقة جديدة مثل الغاز الطبيعي، الطاقة الشمسية، وطاقة الرياح لإنتاج طاقة نظيفة للمنازل والمصانع. هذه التغييرات جعلت مصر أكثر حداثة وأكثر اعتمادًا على نفسها.

مع بناء البلاد لمصانع جديدة، يجد المزيد من المصريين فرص عمل ويساهمون في اقتصاد متنامٍ. اليوم، يفخر الناس ببلادهم وبكيفية تطورها كل يوم. تُظهر الصناعات في مصر كيف يمكن للأمة أن تصبح أقوى عندما نؤمن بالابتكار، العمل الجاد، والعمل الجماعي. المصانع التي لم تكن موجودة من قبل تضيء الآن المستقبل للملايين.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 In Egypt, the industry produces high-quality fabrics.
a. textile b. farming c. tourism d. oil
- 2 The factory new products last year.
a. believed b. grew c. manufactured d. appreciated
- 3 A person can solve problems without always asking for help.
a. shy b. lazy c. careless d. self-reliant
- 4 Everyone should to making the community better.
a. contribute b. sell c. hide d. sleep

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

energy – industrial – steel – industries – textile

I'm Miss Samira. As a teacher, I tell my students how Egypt has changed over the years. It's becoming one of the strongest ⁽¹⁾ countries. We used to depend on farming, but now we have many ⁽²⁾ Factories make clothes, food, and ⁽³⁾ Clean energy, like solar and wind ⁽⁴⁾, helps our country stay safe. I want my students to learn that hard work makes Egypt better for everyone.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- Today, egypt has changed greatly

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Which Egyptian city is famous for the textile industry?
- 2 What do people feel about their country's progress today?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

Talking about habits in the past التحدث عن العادات في الماضي

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "used to" for things that happened regularly in the past but not now.
نستخدم "used to" بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للأشياء التي حدثت بانتظام في الماضي ولكن ليس الآن.

Form التكوين

- After "used to", the verb is always in the base form (no -ing or -ed).
بعد "used to" يكون الفعل دائماً في الصيغة الأساسية (بدون -ing أو -ed).

1 Affirmative الإثبات

- To talk about past habits or states that are no longer true.
للتحدث عن عادات أو حالات سابقة لم تعد صحيحة.

Subject + **used to** + base verb (الفعل الأساسي) ...

Ex: – Students **used to** write on small boards.



2 Negative النفي

- To talk about things that didn't happen in the past.
للتحدث عن أشياء لم تحدث في الماضي.

Subject + **didn't use to** + base verb ...

Ex: – Schools **didn't use to** have computers.



3 Question الاستفهام

- To ask about past habits or situations.
للسؤال عن عادات أو مواقف سابقة.

Did + subject + **use to** + base verb ...?

Ex: – **Did** students **use to** study online?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I used to football in the school yard.
a. playing b. play c. plays d. played
- 2 people use to write with pens in the past?
a. Do b. Does c. Did d. Doing
- 3 My father to work in a big factory.
a. used b. using c. uses d. use
- 4 Cars use to be so fast.
a. haven't b. didn't c. don't d. aren't
- 5 We used to in a small village.
a. lives b. live c. living d. lived
- 6 My brother didn't to get up early.
a. uses b. using c. use d. used
- 7 Did you use play in the street after school?
a. to b. for c. by d. of
- 8 Egyptians didn't use to their own goods.
a. producing b. produce c. produces d. produced

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 She didn't (used) to like vegetables.
- 2 (Does) your grandfather use to live in Cairo?
- 3 Fares (don't) use to visit his grandparents every summer.
- 4 Did your teacher use to (gave) you homework every day?
- 5 People (uses to) read newspapers every morning.
- 6 They didn't (using) to travel abroad.
- 7 People used to (writing) letters instead of emails.
- 8 Did your father use (in) drive to work?

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is becoming stronger every year as new factories and industries appear across the country. These developments have changed the way people live and work. In the past, there were few machines, but now modern factories produce clothes, food, and building materials for Egypt and other nations. The country also uses clean energy such as solar and wind power to protect the environment and support the country's growth. These important changes create jobs, connect cities, and help Egypt depend on itself. Today, Egyptians feel proud of their nation's progress and believe the future will continue to shine even brighter.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The text is about Egypt's growth.
a. industrial b. farming c. tourism d. art
- 2 The underlined word "solar" means coming from the
a. sun b. water c. air d. soil

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What do modern factories produce today?
.....
- 4 What happens when Egypt uses renewable energy sources?
.....
- 5 What do Egyptians believe about the future?
.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 Did Egyptians (used) to celebrate festivals?
- 2 My father didn't use to (traveling) abroad.

Lesson 3 (A) Egypt Past and Present

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

abroad	في الخارج	clothes	ملابس	fields	حقول
quickly	بسرعة	government	الحكومة	truly	حقًا

Adjectives الصفات

proud	فخور	small	صغير	sold	مُباع
-------	------	-------	------	------	-------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
support يدعم	supported	supported

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

look like يبدو كما/يبدو كأنه	work in يعمل في
------------------------------	-----------------

Listen, look, and read:

استمع، انظر واقرأ:

S B page 69



Egypt used to depend mostly on farming, and most people worked in fields or small local shops. There weren't many factories, and people didn't use to have machines to make goods quickly. But today, Egypt has developed



many new industries. The textile factories produce clothes and fabrics that are sold across the country and even abroad. Engineers use solar and wind power to create clean energy. The government also builds new roads, bridges, and new cities to support these changes. Egyptians are proud because their country has become more self-reliant and industrial. Egypt truly doesn't look like it used to – it's growing stronger every day!

كانت مصر تعتمد في الغالب على الزراعة، وكان معظم الناس يعملون في الحقول أو المتاجر المحلية الصغيرة. لم يكن هناك الكثير من المصانع، ولم يكن الناس يمتلكون الآلات اللازمة لصنع البضائع بسرعة. لكن اليوم، طوّرت مصر العديد من الصناعات الجديدة. تنتج مصانع المنسوجات الملابس والأقمشة المُباعة في جميع أنحاء البلاد وحتى في الخارج. يستخدم المهندسون الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لإنتاج طاقة نظيفة. تبني الحكومة أيضًا طرقًا، جسورًا، ومدنًا جديدة لدعم هذه التغييرات. يفخر المصريون بأن بلدهم أصبح أكثر اعتمادًا على الذات وأكثر صناعية. مصر حقًا لم تعد تبدو كما كانت من قبل – إنها تزداد قوة كل يوم!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 People in the past worked in to grow food for their families.
a. tourism b. farming c. oil d. manufacturing
- 2 Some Egyptians ran small in their towns and villages.
a. crops b. future c. shops d. power
- 3 Today, Egypt uses power to make clean energy.
a. oil b. fuel c. coal d. wind
- 4 Egypt is now a/an country. It has more factories and machines.
a. industrial b. farming c. desert d. tourism

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النصّ مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

bridges – solar – factories – government – coal

In the past, Egypt mostly depended on farming, and people worked in fields or small local shops. There were few ⁽¹⁾ and no machines to make goods fast. Today, Egypt has many industries and modern factories clean energy sources, such as ⁽²⁾ and wind power. The ⁽³⁾ builds new roads and ⁽⁴⁾ Egyptians are proud of their strong and growing country.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- egypt has developed many new industries

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 What did people in Egypt use to do in the past?

- 2 Why are Egyptians proud of their country today?

B Pronunciation

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر ورّد:



Play Audio

Remember

- A prefix is a small part we add to the beginning of a word.
• البادئة هي جزء صغير نضيفه إلى بداية الكلمة.
- It changes the meaning of the word and sometimes changes the sound when we say it.
• فهي تغيّر معنى الكلمة وأحياناً تغيّر الصوت عندما نقولها.

Prefix "en-" البادئة "en-"

Meaning: to make or cause to be or to put into أن يجعل أو يتسبب في وجود أو يضع في

Words with the prefix "en-" كلمات ذات بادئة «en-»

enrich	يُثْرِي/يُغْنِي	enlarge	يُكَبِّر/يُوسِّع
encourage	يَشجِّع	endanger	يُعَرِّض للخطر
enable	يُمكِّن		

- Ex:** – The teacher encouraged us to try harder.
– New roads enrich the country's development.

Suffix "-en" اللاحقة "-en"

Remember

- A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word to change its meaning or form.
• اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الحروف المضافة إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو شكلها.

Meaning: to make or to become أن يجعل أو أن يصبح

Words with the suffix "-en" كلمات ذات اللاحقة «-en»

widen	يُوسِّع	soften	يُنْعَم
darken	يظلم/يعتم	brighten	يُنِير/يجعله ساطعاً
shorten	يختصر	lighten	يضيئ/يُخَفِّف

- Ex:** – They will widen the bridge next year.
– The clouds darkened the afternoon sky.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Long ago, Egypt depended mostly on farming. Most people worked in fields. Others worked in small shops. There weren't many factories, and people didn't have machines to make goods quickly. Today, Egypt is different. It has many new industries. Textile factories make clothes and fabrics that are sold in Egypt and abroad. Engineers work in modern places that use solar and wind power to make clean energy. The government builds new roads, bridges, and industrial areas. Egyptians are proud because their country is growing, changing, and becoming stronger every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The underlined word "Textile" means working with
 a. fabric b. crops c. drinks d. wood
- 2 Egypt depended mostly on
 a. tourism b. oil c. farming d. metals

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What has changed in Egypt's industries over time?

.....

- 4 Where are the clothes and fabrics from Egyptian factories sold?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 The engineer wants to (large) the road to reduce traffic.
- 2 You can (light) the color with some white paint.

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

palm trees	أشجار النخيل	beauty	جمال	culture	ثقافة
glass buildings	مبانٍ زجاجية	northern coast	الساحل الشمالي	god	إله
walkways	طرق التمشية	universities	جامعات	history	تاريخ
areas	مناطق	tourist spot	وجهة سياحية	vision	رؤية
Luxor Temple	معبد الأقصر	complex	مجمع	planning	تخطيط
Amun	آمون (إله مصري قديم)	pharaohs	الفراعنة	beaches	شواطئ
statues	تماثيل	stone columns	أعمدة حجرية	blue waters	المياه الزرقاء
shopping centers	مراكز تسوق	symbols	رموز	visitors	زوار
New Alamein City	مدينة العلمين الجديدة	hieroglyphics	نقوش هيروغليفيه	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط

Adjectives الصفات

coastal	ساحلي	sandy	رملي	golden	ذهبي اللون
wide	واسع	peaceful	هادئ	luxury	فاخر
cultural	ثقافي	lively	نابض بالحياة/حيوي	magnificent	رائع
ancient	قديم	remarkable	بارز/مميز	giant	ضخم/عملاق
grand	ضخم/كبير	beautiful	جميل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
combine	combined	combined
reflect	reflected	reflected
honor	honored	honored
imagine	imagined	imagined
remain	remained	remained
design	designed	designed
enjoy	enjoyed	enjoyed
include	included	included



Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
meet يقابل/يلتقي	met	met

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

lie on تمتد على/تقع على	full of life نابضة بالحياة
known for معروف بـ	turn ... into يُحوّل ... إلى
filled with مليئة بـ	walk through يتجول خلال



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

New Alamein City

مدينة العلمين الجديدة

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern coastal cities. It lies on the beautiful northern coast, where the blue waters of the Mediterranean Sea meet golden sandy beaches. The city was designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future. Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees. The city also includes universities, shopping centers, and cultural areas that make it more than just a tourist spot; it's a new home for many Egyptians. New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress, showing how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern, lively city full of life.



مدينة العلمين الجديدة هي واحدة من أحدث المدن الساحلية المصرية، تقع على الساحل الشمالي الجميل، حيث تلتقي مياه البحر المتوسط الزرقاء بالشواطئ الرملية الذهبية. صُممت المدينة لتكون مكانًا ذكيًا يجمع بين التاريخ، الجمال، والحياة العصرية. الطرق الواسعة، الحدائق الخضراء، والمباني الزجاجية العالية تجعلها تبدو وكأنها مدينة المستقبل. يستطيع الزوار أن يستمتعوا بالشواطئ الهادئة، الفنادق الفاخرة، وطرق التمشية الجميلة المليئة بأشجار النخيل. تضم المدينة أيضًا جامعات، مراكز تسوق، ومناطق ثقافية تجعلها أكثر من مجرد وجهة سياحية ولكن أيضًا بيتًا للعديد من المصريين. تعكس العلمين الجديدة رؤية مصر للتقدم، موضحة كيف أن الابتكار والتخطيط يمكن أن يُحوّل الصحراء إلى مدينة عصرية نابضة بالحياة.



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing a descriptive paragraph about a modern Egyptian city

نصائح لكتابة فقرة وصفية عن مدينة مصرية حديثة



- Start with where the place is. ابدأ بأين يقع هذا المكان.
Ex: It lies on the beautiful northern coast.
- Describe what it looks like (colors, size, features). صف كيف يبدو (الألوان، الحجم، والمميزات).
Ex: Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings
- Mention what people can do there. اذكر ما يمكن أن يفعله الناس هناك.
Ex: Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches and luxury hotels.
- End with your opinion or feeling about the place. اختتم برأيك أو شعورك تجاه المكان.
Ex: New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress.

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A Flyer about a Famous Place in Egypt

نشرة إعلانية عن أحد الأماكن المشهورة في مصر

main header

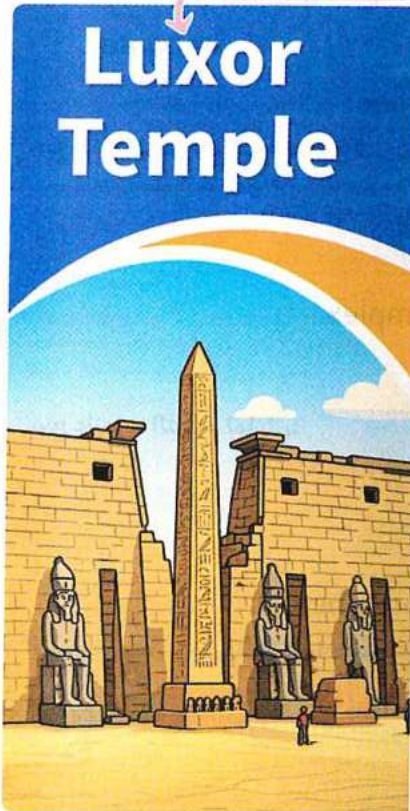
العنوان الرئيسي

description

الوصف

image

صورة



Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex in the city of Luxor. It was built to honor the god Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt. The temple is known for its giant statues, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics. Visitors can walk through its grand gates and imagine life in ancient Egypt. It remains one of the country's most remarkable symbols of history and culture.

معبد الأقصر هو مجمع قديم رائع في مدينة الأقصر. بُني لتكريم الإله آمون والفرعون العظيم في مصر. يُعرف المعبد بتمانيه الضخمة، وأعمدته الحجرية الشاهقة، ونقوشه الهيروغليفية الجميلة. يمكن للزوار التجول خلال بواباته الكبرى وتخيل الحياة في مصر القديمة. ولا يزال يُعدّ واحدًا من أبرز رموز التاريخ والثقافة في البلاد.





Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for creating a flyer about a famous place

نصائح لإنشاء نشرة إعلانية عن مكان مشهور



Your flyer must include ...

يجب أن تحتوي النشرة الإعلانية الخاصة بك على ...

- Main header: name of the place.

عنوان رئيسي: اسم المكان.

- Description (3-5 sentences): include history, importance, and fun facts.

الوصف (3-5 جمل): ضمّن التاريخ، الأهمية، والحقائق الممتعة.

- Pictures or drawings: make it colorful and eye-catching.

صور أو رسومات: اجعلها ملوّنة وملفتة للعين.

Lessons 4&5

Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- cities are known for their delicious seafood.
a. Coastal b. Street c. Desert d. Industrial
- The Pyramids are a famous tourist in Egypt.
a. coast b. statue c. spot d. gate
- Can you how you'd feel if you won a million pounds?
a. see b. remain c. honor d. imagine

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوّن جُملاً:

- New – a modern – City – Alamein – Egyptian – city. – is

- Temple – ancient – Luxor – a magnificent – is – complex.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- the temple is known for its giant statues

4 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"The New Administrative Capital"
(vision – universities)

Vocabulary

infrastructure	بنية تحتية	determination	عزيمة	highway	طريق سريع
innovation	ابتكار	extend	يُمتد/يمدُّ	goods	بضائع
investment	استثمار	power source	مصدر طاقة	steel industry	صناعة الصلب
nation	أمة	pharaohs	الفراعنة	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
transportation	وسائل المواصلات	solar energy	طاقة شمسية	luxury	فاخر
textile	منسوجات	tunnels	أنفاق	industrial	صناعي
manufacture	يصنع/تصنيع	fabrics	أقمشة	factories	مصانع
future	مستقبل	machines	آلات/ماكينات	high-quality	عالي الجودة
Africa	أفريقيا	universities	جامعات	economy	اقتصاد
northern coast	الساحل الشمالي	complex	مجمع	stone columns	أعمدة حجرية
grand	ضخم/كبير	magnificent	رائع	self-reliant	معتمد على الذات
crowded	مزدحم	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط

Language

Talking about habits in the past

- We use "used to" for things that happened regularly in the past but not now.
- نستخدم "used to" بمعنى «اعتاد أن» للأشياء التي حدثت بانتظام في الماضي ولكن ليس الآن.

Affirmative

Subject + **used to** + base verb ...Ex: – Students **used to** write on small boards.

Negative

Subject + **didn't use to** + base verb ...Ex: – Schools **didn't use to** have computers.

Question

Did + subject + **use to** + base verb ...?Ex: – **Did** students **use to** study online?



Reading in Points

Lesson 1 Egypt's New Landscape

- Egypt has new infrastructure projects. مصر لديها مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة.
- Travel between cities used to be slow, but now it's faster because of modern highways, bridges, and tunnels. كان السفر بين المدن بطيئاً في الماضي، لكنه أصبح أسرع الآن بفضل الطرق السريعة الحديثة، الجسور، والأنفاق.
- The New Administrative Capital shows how Egypt continues to grow and develop. تُظهر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة كيف تستمر مصر في النمو والتطور.
- Such projects support the economy. مثل هذه المشاريع تدعم الاقتصاد.
- They also make Egypt stronger, more modern, and better connected. إنها تجعل مصر أيضاً أقوى، أكثر حداثة، وأكثر ترابطاً.

Lesson 2 Building Egypt's Modern Economy

- Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries. تصبح مصر واحدة من أقوى الدول الصناعية.
- In the past, people depended on farming and small local jobs. في الماضي، اعتمد الناس على الزراعة والوظائف المحلية الصغيرة.
- Today, Egypt has textile, food, and steel industries. اليوم، تمتلك مصر صناعات النسيج، الغذاء، والصلب.
- Power sources like natural gas, solar energy, and wind energy create clean power. مصادر الطاقة مثل الغاز الطبيعي، الطاقة الشمسية، وطاقة الرياح تنتج طاقة نظيفة.
- These changes create jobs and help the country grow stronger. هذه التغييرات توفر فرص عمل، وتساعد البلاد على النمو بشكل أقوى.

Lessons 4&5 Egypt Inside Out/Think and Create

- New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern cities. مدينة العلمين الجديدة هي إحدى أحدث مدن مصر.
- It's a smart and impressive city that combines history, beauty, and modern life. إنها مدينة ذكية وبديعة تجمع بين التاريخ، الجمال، والحياة العصرية.
- It has wide roads, green parks, and tall buildings that offer a beautiful view of the sea. بها بطرق واسعة، حدائق خضراء، ومبانٍ شاهقة التي توفر إطلالة خلابة على البحر.
- Visitors can enjoy sandy beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees. يمكن للزوار الاستمتاع بالشواطئ الرملية، الفنادق الفاخرة، وطرق التمشية الجميلة المليئة بأشجار النخيل.
- It's more than just a tourist spot as it includes universities, shopping centers, and cultural areas. إنها أكثر من مجرد وجهة سياحية إذ تضم جامعات، مراكز تسوق، ومناطق ثقافية.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

بنية تحتية	عزيمة
أنفاق	طريق سريع
أنظمة	ابتكار
اقتصاد	يمتد/يمد
مستقبل	بضائع
صبور	مهندسون

Lesson (2)

يصنع/تصنيع	صناعة الصلب
صناعي	مصدر طاقة
مصانع	معتمد على الذات
منتجات	طاقة الرياح
زراعة	عمل جماعي
محلي	أقمشة
منسوجات	قرى

Lesson (3)

حقول	فخور
في الخارج	صغير
يُوسّع	حقاً
الحكومة	يُعَرِّض للخطر

Lessons (4&5)

أشجار النخيل	الفراعة
وجهة سياحية	رموز
جامعات	البحر المتوسط
أعمدة حجرية	طرق التمشية
زوار	معبد الأقصر



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	P.P.	Present	Past	P.P.
change			produce	.....	.....
build			has/have	.....	.....
reach			help	.....	.....
enjoy			include	.....	.....
combine			create	.....	.....
get			exist	.....	.....
improve			reflect	.....	.....
support			meet	.....	.....
develop			honor	.....	.....
become			design	.....	.....
connect			imagine	.....	.....
show			remain	.....	.....
use			transport	.....	.....
find			grow	.....	.....
make			allow	.....	.....



Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Development projects in Egypt"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وصرّفها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. construction 2. infrastructure 3. economy

Verbs

1. build 2. manufacture 3. strengthen

Others

1. amazing 2. modern 3. high-quality

2 Form your sentences.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence

(تكملة الجملة)

1. Egypt has made amazing progress.

3. It manufactures high-quality products.

2. It works on construction projects and builds modern infrastructure.

4. These new projects strengthen Egypt's economy.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

Egypt has made amazing progress in recent years. It works on many construction projects and builds modern infrastructure. It manufactures high-quality products. It also extends its road network and builds new factories. These new projects strengthen Egypt's economy. Innovation helps countries grow and improve people's daily lives. Egyptians are proud of their country and how it is becoming more self-reliant.

Write it yourself! اكتب بنفسك!

"New Alamein City"

Nouns

1. 2. 3.

Verbs

1. 2. 3.

Others

1. 2. 3.

Your sentences

1.

3.

2.

4.

Your paragraph فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

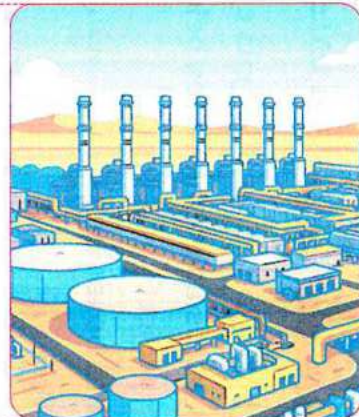
Egypt's new road network

Egypt has improved its infrastructure in recent years. Roads in the past were narrow and crowded. People took a long time to move from one place to another. Now, there are smart transportations and modern road networks that include highways, bridges, and tunnels. They connect all parts of the country. This made traveling easier and faster. It also helps many people improve their work.



Egypt's growing economy

Egypt is turning into a strong industrial country. It is now depending not only on farming but also on industry. It is building large facilities and new industrial fields. Egypt has developed strong industries like textile, food, and steel industries. People now depend on clean power sources to generate energy for homes and factories. These changes have made Egypt more modern and more self-reliant.



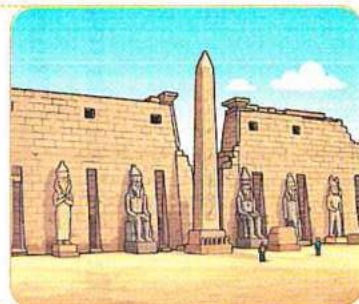
Modern cities in Egypt

Egypt is developing modern cities. These cities are smart and beautiful. One of these cities is New Alamein. It is a coastal city with golden sandy beaches. It includes universities and cultural areas, too. Another city is the New Administrative Capital, which turned from a desert into a lively city full of life. Such cities reflect Egypt's commitment to progress and growth.



Luxor Temple

Luxor Temple is an impressive tourist spot in Upper Egypt. It's an ancient complex near Luxor. It's close to the Nile River. It was built to honor God Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt. It has grand gates, great statues, and tall columns. It also has many beautiful hieroglyphics. It is one of Egypt's most remarkable symbols of history.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Choose the correct form of "used to":

اختر الصيغة الصحيحة من "used to":

- Teachers (use to / used to / didn't use) depend on textbooks only.
- (Did / Do / Does) students use to write on small boards?
- In the past, students (used to / use to / did use) walk long distances to school.

2 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Engineers will the road to reduce traffic.
a. large b. enlarge c. enlargen d. larger
- The teacher wants to students to read more.
a. courage b. encouraged c. encourage d. encouraging
- Heavy rain can the color of the sand.
a. dark b. darken c. darkness d. darked
- They will the road next year.
a. widen b. enwide c. wide d. wider
- People plant trees to the soil.
a. rich b. richness c. richer d. enrich

3 Fill in the blanks using words from the box:

املأ الفراغات بكلمات من الصندوق:

innovation – determination – infrastructure – extend – highways

- Egypt has improved its through new roads, bridges, and tunnels.
- The government shows great in completing national projects.
- Teams of engineers work hard to build modern to connect all parts of the country.
- The country continues to its road network every year.
- Modern projects reflect Egypt's creativity and

Test on unit (4)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Egypt showed commitment to improving the well-being of its people. ()
2. The crowded roads made it easy to transport people and goods. ()
3. Egypt hasn't extended its roads. ()
4. Today, traveling and transporting goods are easier and more organized. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The steel helps build new roads, bridges, and houses in Egypt.
a. industry b. school c. university d. hospital
2. The sports has playgrounds, courts, and swimming pools.
a. complex b. sea c. mountain d. vehicle
3. Egyptians used to in small local shops.
a. worked b. working c. works d. work
4. The new bridges the way to school. I can arrive early now.
a. shorter b. enshort c. shorten d. short

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. The sky began to (dark) before the storm.
2. (Was) Salma use to play sports?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. is – growing – Egypt – every – stronger – day!
.....
2. can – the temple's – Visitors – walk – gates. – through – grand
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. which power sources can create clean energy
.....
2. We produce food products like pasta juice, and snacks
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Luxor Temple”
(gates – columns)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

symbol – honor – Luxor Temple – magnificent – pharaohs – gates

Noha: Hello, Omar! Where did you go last week?

Omar: Hello! I went to ⁽¹⁾ It is a ⁽²⁾ complex.

Noha: Do you know why it was built?

Omar: It was built to ⁽³⁾ the great ⁽⁴⁾ of Egypt.

Noha: Wow! It is an important ⁽⁵⁾ of history and culture.

Omar: Exactly! I loved it so much.

(B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. People (use to) travel by camels and horses in the desert.

2. Warm water can (soft) the bread.

3. I (don't) use to like fruits when I was young.

4. My grandparents used to (living) near the Nile River.

5. Pollution can (danger) sea animals.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. He is He can finish his homework without anyone's help.

- a. self-reliant b. shy c. slow d. local

2. This statue is very It's from the pharaohs' time.

- a. new b. ancient c. small d. modern

3. I'm an engineer. I'm starting a new project tomorrow.

- a. progress b. determination c. infrastructure d. system

4. I work in a that manufactures pasta.

- a. factory b. school c. hospital d. café



5. People visit the Mediterranean to swim and enjoy the beautiful beaches.
a. Sea b. River c. Lake d. Pond
6. people use to make bread at home?
a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Is
7. Reading can your mind.
a. rich b. enrich c. richer d. get rich
8. Children used to outside all day.
a. played b. plays c. play d. playing
9. Students used study with books only, not tablets.
a. of b. for c. to d. in
10. My town use to have a café.
a. doesn't b. didn't c. don't d. did

(C) ■ Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. bridges – highways – tunnels – kitchen (.....)
2. strength – growth – production – improve (.....)
3. solar – natural gas – wind – Cairo (.....)
4. allow – prepare – traveled – connect (.....)
5. textile – fabric – machine – future (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm Salma. I'm thirty years old. I live in a small town with my family. I own a small shop. I've seen big changes in recent years. New bridges, tunnels, and roads help customers reach my shop more easily. New factories help me produce bigger amounts of my products. Trucks bring goods faster so I can sell more now. In the past, traffic was slow and people got tired, but everything moves better today. These projects show that Egypt is growing and working hard to make life easier for business owners like me.

**(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:**

1. Salma owns a shopping mall. ()
2. New projects improve Salma's business. ()
3. Trucks bring goods faster. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4. Traffic was and people got tired.
a. fast b. great c. slow d. strong
5. These show that Egypt is growing.
a. projects b. movies c. books d. plans

(D) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences:**

"Your visit to a modern city"

(coastal – sandy – parks – walkways – Egyptians)

5

Unit

Safe and Smart Transportation for Egypt's Future

Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking

- Use transportation vocabulary in short role-plays and discussions
- Ask and answer questions about new and modern transportation systems
- Talk about future transportation ideas and inventions
- Use the First Conditional correctly to discuss possible future situations

- استخدام مفردات وسائل المواصلات في لعب أدوار ومناقشات قصيرة
- السؤال والإجابة عن أسئلة حول أنظمة وسائل المواصلات الجديدة والحديثة
- التحدث عن أفكار واختراعات وسائل المواصلات المستقبلية
- استخدام الحالة الشرطية الأولى بشكل صحيح لمناقشة مواقف مستقبلية محتملة

Listening

- Understand the main idea of short spoken texts about transportation and travel
- Recognize key transportation vocabulary in listening activities
- Follow short spoken instructions related to travel, safety, and directions
- Identify specific details such as payment methods, rules, or announcements in listening tasks

- فهم الفكرة الرئيسية للنصوص شفوية قصيرة عن وسائل المواصلات والسفر
- التعرف على مفردات وسائل المواصلات الرئيسية في أنشطة استماع
- اتباع تعليمات شفوية قصيرة متعلقة بالسفر، السلامة، والاتجاهات
- تحديد تفاصيل محددة مثل طرق الدفع، القواعد، أو الإعلانات في مهام استماع

Reading

- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short reading texts about transportation in Egypt and around the world
- Recognize new transportation related vocabulary in context
- Make simple inferences about how transportation can change people's lives in the future

- تحديد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الداعمة في نصوص القراءة القصيرة حول وسائل المواصلات في مصر وحول العالم
- التعرف على مفردات جديدة متعلقة بوسائل المواصلات في سياق
- التوصل إلى استنتاجات بسيطة عن كيف يمكن أن تغير وسائل المواصلات حياة الناس في المستقبل

Writing

- Write an email suggesting or describing future transportation solutions
- Write First Conditional sentences about transportation and the environment
- Create a short magazine article or brochure describing future transportation ideas

- كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني تقترح أو تصف حلولاً مستقبلية لوسائل المواصلات
- كتابة جمل حالة شرطية أولى حول وسائل المواصلات والبيئة
- إنشاء مقال قصير في مجلة أو منشور يصف أفكاراً مستقبلية لوسائل المواصلات

 Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

New Vocabulary

مفردات جديدة



announcement

إعلان



passengers

ركاب



ticket machine

آلة تذاكر



elevator

مصعد



digital screen

شاشة رقمية



escalator

سلم متحرك/ كهربائي



pay by card

يدفع بالبطاقة البنكية



smart doors

أبواب ذكية

Extra Vocabulary

مفردات إضافية

line	خط	automatically	تلقائيًا	inside	الداخل
lights	أضواء	cash	نقدًا	access	وصول/دخول
electricity	كهرباء	environment	بيئة	stop/station	محطة
LED	إضاءة موفرة للطاقة	phone	هاتف	metro	مترو

Adjectives

الصفات

faster	أسرع	cleaner	أنظف	clear	واضح
easy	سهل	new	جديد	better	أفضل



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
open يفتح	opened	opened
close يغلق	closed	closed
use يستخدم	used	used
save يوفر/يحفظ/ينقذ	saved	saved
stop يتوقف	stopped	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hear يسمع	heard	heard
pay يدفع	paid	paid
make يصنع/يجعل	made	made
ride يركب	rode	ridden

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

stand back from يبتعد عن	than before من ذي قبل
Welcome to مرحبًا بكم في	Thank you for شكرا لكم على

Definitions

تعريفات

ticket machine آلة تذاكر	a machine where you buy tickets آلة لشراء التذاكر
announcement إعلان	speaking to give information to many people التحدث لإعطاء معلومات للعديد من الناس
digital screen شاشة رقمية	an electric device for showing words or pictures جهاز كهربائي لإظهار الكلمات أو الصور
elevator مصعد	a moving platform that goes up or down in a building منصة متحركة تصعد أو تهبط في مبنى ما
escalator سلم متحرك	a moving staircase سلم متحرك

**(Reading) main points****النقاط الأساسية في فقرة القراءة**

- The new Green Line in the Cairo Metro has modern features.
يتميز الخط الأخضر الجديد لمetro القاهرة بمواصفات حديثة.
- New trains have smart doors and digital screens showing time and next stations.
القطارات الجديدة بها أبواب ذكية وشاشات رقمية تُظهر الوقت والمحطات التالية.
- There are announcements in both Arabic and English.
توجد إعلانات باللغتين العربية والإنجليزية.
- Giza Station has modern ticket machines, elevators, and escalators.
محطة الجيزة بها آلات تذاكر حديثة، مصاعد، وسلالم متحركة.
- The metro uses smart electricity and LED lights to save energy and protect the environment.
يستخدم المترو كهرباء ذكية وأضواء LED لتوفير الطاقة وحماية البيئة.

Reading**Listen, look, and read:**

S B page 78

استمع، انظر واقرأ:



Play Audio

"Good morning, passengers. Welcome to the Cairo Metro. This is Line 3, the Green Line. The next stop is Giza Station. The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner than before. New trains have smart doors that open and close automatically. Inside the train, there are big digital screens. They show the next station and the time. You can also hear clear announcements in Arabic and English. At Giza Station, there are new ticket machines. You can pay by card, a phone, or cash. There are also elevators and escalators for easy access. The metro uses smart electricity. The lights are LED and the trains save electricity when they stop. This makes the metro better for the environment. Please stand back from the doors. The next stop is Giza. Thank you for riding with us."



«صباح الخير أيها الركاب. مرحبًا بكم في مترو القاهرة. هذا هو الخط الثالث، الخط الأخضر. المحطة التالية هي محطة الجيزة. أصبح مترو الجيزة الآن أسرع وأنظف من ذي قبل. القطارات الجديدة بها أبواب ذكية تفتح وتغلق تلقائيًا. داخل القطار، توجد شاشات رقمية كبيرة تُظهر المحطة التالية والوقت. يمكنكم أيضًا سماع إعلانات واضحة باللغتين العربية والإنجليزية. في محطة الجيزة، توجد آلات تذاكر جديدة. يمكنكم الدفع بالبطاقة البنكية، الهاتف، أو نقدًا. كما توجد مصاعد وسلالم متحركة لسهولة الوصول. يستخدم المترو الكهرباء الذكية. المصابيح من نوع LED (موفرة للطاقة) والقطارات توفر الكهرباء عند توقفها. هذا يجعل المترو أفضل للبيئة. يُرجى الابتعاد عن الأبواب. المحطة التالية هي الجيزة. شكرًا لركوبكم معنا».



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False: استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 Egypt's new Sphinx International Airport makes travel harder. ()
- 2 It has smart doors that open and close automatically. ()
- 3 The airport uses wind power. ()
- 4 The Sphinx Airport shows Egypt's step towards a greener future. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The waited in line to get on the bus.
a. bikes b. leaves c. books d. passengers
- 2 A/An is a moving platform that goes up or down in a building.
a. elevator b. drone c. gadget d. desk
- 3 A/An door opens automatically when someone gets close.
a. good b. smart c. old d. green
- 4 The stopped working, so we took the stairs.
a. train b. fridge c. escalator d. robot
- 5 An electric device for showing words or pictures is a
a. keyboard b. board c. digital screen d. ticket machine
- 6 The school made a/an about the new art competition.
a. announcement b. exam c. lesson d. pen
- 7 If you don't have enough cash, you can pay by
a. card b. notebook c. ticket d. paper
- 8 It's easy to print your ticket from the ticket
a. park b. machine c. couch d. belt

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

tickets – wait – faster – elevators – cash

Today, we're talking about Bassteel Railway Station in Giza. Inside the station, passengers can use ⁽¹⁾ and escalators for easy access to different levels and platforms. There are also digital screens that show all the information you need about your trip. There are ticket machines where you can easily get your ⁽²⁾ You can pay by card or in ⁽³⁾ Clean waiting areas and modern designs make travel more comfortable and ⁽⁴⁾

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جُملاً:

1 electricity – The trains – when – save – stop. – they

2 show – and – station – Digital screens – the next – the time.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

1 how can passengers pay for tickets

2 you can hear clear announcements in Arabic and english.

4 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

"The Cairo Metro"

(smart doors – ticket machines)



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

way	طريقة/أسلوب	smartly	بذكاء	systems	أنظمة
project	مشروع	monorail	مونوريل (قطار أحادي السكة)	track	مسار
above	فوق/أعلى	ground	أرض	quickly	بسرعة
properly	بشكل صحيح	future	مستقبل	transportation	وسائل المواصلات

Adjectives الصفات

exciting	مثير	single	أحادي/فردى	important	مهم
electric	كهربائي	bright	براق/زاه	smarter	أذكى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
change	changed	changed
travel	traveled	traveled
continue	continued	continued
connect	connected	connected
listen	listened	listened
block	blocked	blocked
help	helped	helped

**Irregular verbs**

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
find يجد	found	found
eat يأكل	ate	eaten
drink يشرب	drank	drunk
stand يقف	stood	stood
sit يجلس	sat	sat

Important expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

run on electricity يعمل بالكهرباء	make no smoke لا يصدر دخاناً
be able to يتمكن من	stay safe يبقى آمناً
move into يتحرك نحو	follow the rules يتبع القواعد

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Egypt's New Monorail and Electric Buses

المونوريل الجديد والحافلات الكهربائية في مصر

Egypt is changing the way people travel. If these new transportation systems continue to grow in Cairo



and Giza, the cities will become faster, cleaner, and smarter. One exciting project is the monorail, a train that runs on a single track above the ground. It will connect important places quickly. At each station, passengers will find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements.



Some stations also have elevators and escalators, so people will travel more easily. Passengers must buy a ticket and listen to announcements. They mustn't block the smart doors. The electric bus will help the environment because it runs on electricity and makes no smoke. Passengers will be able to pay by card or phone. The bus has smart doors and bright LED lights. People will stay safe if they stand or sit properly, but they won't follow the rules if they eat or drink on the bus. With the monorail and electric buses, Egypt will move smartly into the future.

مصر تعتبر الطريقة التي يسافر بها الناس، إذا استمرت أنظمة وسائل المواصلات الجديدة في التطور في القاهرة والجيزة، ستصبح المدينتان أسرع، أنظف، وأذكى. أحد المشاريع المثيرة للاهتمام هو المونوريل، قطار يسير على مسار أحادي فوق الأرض. سيربط بين الأماكن المهمة بسرعة. سيجد الركاب في كل محطة آلات تذاكر، شاشات رقمية، وإعلانات. بعض المحطات أيضًا بها مصاعد وسلالم متحركة، مما يُسهّل تنقل الناس. يجب على الركاب شراء تذكرة والاستماع للإعلانات. يجب عليهم عدم سد الأبواب الذكية. ستساعد الحافلة الكهربائية البيئة لأنها تعمل بالكهرباء ولا تصدر دخانًا. سيتمكن الركاب من الدفع بالبطاقة البنكية أو الهاتف. الحافلة بها أبواب ذكية وأضواء LED (موفرة للطاقة) براقية. سيبقى الناس آمنين إذا وقفوا أو جلسوا بشكل صحيح، لكنهم لن يتبعوا القواعد إذا أكلوا أو شربوا في الحافلة. بفضل المونوريل والحافلات الكهربائية، ستتحرك مصر بذكاء نحو المستقبل.

Tryout



Read and put (✓) or (X):

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X):

- 1 The monorail runs under the ground. ()
- 2 People are allowed to eat or drink on electric buses. ()
- 3 The electric bus will help reduce pollution. ()
- 4 Electric buses have smart doors and bright lights. ()
- 5 The new transportation systems offer different payment methods. ()
- 6 New transportation systems make traveling faster and cities cleaner. ()

Answers: 1. (X) 2. (X) 3. (✓) 4. (✓) 5. (✓) 6. (✓)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Unlike regular trains, the monorail runs on a/an track.
a. double b. old c. tiny d. single
- 2 You should the rules to stay safe.
a. make b. follow c. break d. save
- 3 The factory makes a lot of This pollutes the air.
a. future b. smoke c. problems d. shapes
- 4 The train didn't start. Someone the smart door.
a. blocked b. grew c. traveled d. took

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

travel – monorail – stop – machine – quickly

Last week, John visited Egypt for the first time. He was so excited to take a ride on the ⁽¹⁾ At the station, he got a ticket from the ticket ⁽²⁾ He checked information about his next ⁽³⁾ on a big digital screen. Inside the train, John admired how the train moved smoothly and ⁽⁴⁾ , offering beautiful views of the city. John enjoyed the ride so much.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- egypt is changing the way people travel

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 How do electric buses help the environment?

- 2 What helps people move easily at the stations?



Read, look, and notice:

اقرأ، انظر ولاحظ:

Language in use

First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

الحالة الشرطية الأولى (الاحتمالات المستقبلية)

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use the First Conditional to talk about possible situations in the future.
- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن مواقف محتملة الوقوع في المستقبل.
- Use the First Conditional when you want to say "If this happens now, then that will happen in the future."
- استخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى عندما تريد أن تقول: «إذا حدث هذا الآن، فسيحدث ذلك في المستقبل».

Form

التكوين

If + **present simple** (المضارع البسيط), **will/won't** + base form of the verb (الصيغة الأساسية للفعل)

if-clause (condition)

جملة if (جملة الشرط)
(present simple)

main clause (result)

الجملة الأساسية (النتيجة)
(will/won't)

Ex: – If you **take** the monorail, you **will** arrive faster.



– If we **use** electric buses, the environment **will** be cleaner.



Note

- The **if-clause** can come at the beginning or the end of the sentence.
- يمكن أن تأتي جملة **if** في بداية الجملة أو في نهايتها.
- When the **if-clause** comes at the beginning of the sentence, use a comma (,) before the main clause (result).
- عندما تأتي جملة **if** في بداية الجملة، استخدم الفاصلة (,) قبل الجملة الرئيسية (النتيجة).

Ex: – People will stay safe **if** they sit properly on the bus.
– **If** people sit properly on the bus, they will stay safe.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 If I my homework, I will play football.
a. finish b. finishes c. finishing d. finished
- 2 If she takes a taxi, she be late.
a. doesn't b. isn't c. won't d. hasn't
- 3 If my friend free time, we will watch a movie together.
a. had b. has c. have d. having
- 4 If Egypt uses more electric buses, pollution decrease.
a. won't b. is c. are d. will
- 5 If you sleep well, you will be tired in the morning.
a. won't b. hasn't c. don't d. doesn't
- 6 If they the new metro line, they won't arrive late.
a. take b. takes c. took d. taking
- 7 If he fast, he won't win the race.
a. run b. don't run c. doesn't run d. runs
- 8 If the metro station has elevators, elderly people easily.
a. move b. moved c. are moving d. will move

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 If we depend on eco-friendly transportation, Egypt will (has) cleaner air.
- 2 If the metro opens a new line, travel (was) faster.
- 3 If he doesn't study, he (won't) fail.
- 4 If they (saving) money, they will buy a new car.
- 5 If the drivers are careful, many accidents (will) happen.
- 6 If she (don't) wear a jacket, she will get cold.
- 7 I will wait for the next metro if this one (were) crowded.
- 8 If he (practice) more, he will become better.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Marwa was late for work. So, she decided to ride the electric bus. It was her first time, and she was excited. She found out that she had no cash, but she could pay by phone for the ticket. The bus arrived on time. There was no smoke or loud engine sound. The doors open automatically. Inside the bus, there was an announcement telling passengers the next stop. The seats were comfortable. Marwa saw a digital screen showing time. The ride was easy and fast. When she reached her stop, she felt proud knowing that Egypt builds a cleaner and smarter future for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The bus doors open automatically because they are doors.
a. better b. smart c. new d. damaged
- 2 The underlined word "announcement" means "speaking to give to people".
a. information b. notes c. stories d. steps

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 Why did Marwa decide to ride the electric bus?

.....

- 4 What makes the electric bus different from other buses?

.....

- 5 What is the text mainly about?

.....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة (للكلمات) بين القوسين:

- 1 If the transportation services (improves), more people will stop using cars.
- 2 If Nada forgets her ticket, she will (bought) one from the machine.

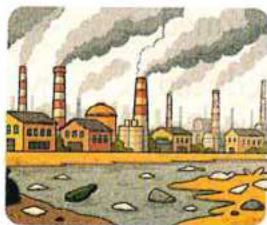
Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



eco-friendly

صديق للبيئة



pollution

تلوث



self-driving

ذاتية القيادة



renewable energy

طاقة متجددة

Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

vehicles	مركبات	fuel	وقود	noise	ضوضاء
world	العالم	safely	بأمان	road	طريق
without	بدون	driver	سائق	red lights	الإشارات الحمراء
accidents	حوادث	easily	بسهولة	countries	بلاد
people	ناس/أشخاص	sources	مصادر	planet	كوكب
petrol	بنزين	diesel	ديزل	generations	أجيال
air	هواء	everyone	الجميع	even	حتى
wind	الرياح	place	مكان	together	معًا
Earth	كوكب الأرض	cameras	كاميرات	computers	أجهزة الكمبيوتر

Adjectives الصفات

fresh	نقي	renewable	متجدد	natural	طبيعي
-------	-----	-----------	-------	---------	-------



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
harm يؤذي/يضر	harmed	harmed
reduce يُقلِّل	reduced	reduced
avoid يتجنَّب	avoided	avoided
power يشغِّل	powered	powered
protect يحمي	protected	protected
stop يتوقف	stopped	stopped
move يتحرك	moved	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean يعني/يقصد	meant	meant
keep يحفظ/يُبقى	kept	kept
come يأتي	came	come
choose يختار	chose	chosen
become يصبح	became	become

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

For example, على سبيل المثال,	slow down يهدئ السرعة
on foot على الأقدام/مشيًا	run out ينفد

Tryout

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Renewable reduces pollution.
a. energy b. planet c. noise d. air
- Petrol and diesel are types of
a. wind b. electricity c. fuel d. sun

2. (c)

Answers: 1. (d)



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly, which means they do not harm the environment. For example, electric buses and trains use less fuel and make less noise. This helps reduce pollution in cities and keeps the air fresh for everyone. Some cars today are even self-driving. These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid accidents. In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more safely and easily. Many countries are also using renewable energy to power their transportation. Renewable energy comes from natural sources like the sun, wind, and water. It never runs out and is better for our planet than petrol or diesel. If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation and uses renewable energy, the world will become a cleaner and safer place. Together, we can help reduce pollution and protect Earth for future generations.



في المستقبل، سوف يسافر الناس بطرق أذكى وأنظف. أصبح العديد من المركبات الجديدة صديقة للبيئة، مما يعني أنها لا تضر البيئة. على سبيل المثال، تستخدم الحافلات والقطارات الكهربائية وقودًا أقل وتُصدر ضوضاء أقل. يساعد هذا على تقليل التلوث في المدن ويحافظ على الهواء نقيًا للجميع. حتى بعض السيارات اليوم أصبحت ذاتية القيادة. تستخدم هذه السيارات كاميرات وأجهزة كمبيوتر للتنقل بأمان على الطريق دون سائق. يمكنها التوقف عند الإشارات الحمراء، وتهدئة السرعة للمشاة، وتجنب الحوادث. في المستقبل، قد تساعد السيارات ذاتية القيادة الناس على التنقل بأمان أكثر وسهولة. تستخدم العديد من البلاد أيضًا الطاقة المتجددة لتشغيل وسائل المواصلات الخاصة بها. تأتي الطاقة المتجددة من مصادر طبيعية مثل الشمس، الرياح، والمياه. إنها لا تنفذ أبدًا، وهي أفضل لكونها من البنزين أو الديزل. إذا اختار الجميع وسائل مواصلات صديقة للبيئة واستخدموا الطاقة المتجددة، فسيصبح العالم مكانًا أنظف وأكثر أمانًا. معًا، يمكننا المساعدة في الحد من التلوث وحماية الأرض للأجيال القادمة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Factories cause when they release smoke into the air.
a. noise b. crowd c. pollution d. energy
- 2 Solar panels produce energy from the sun.
a. strong b. renewable c. little d. non-renewable
- 3 Electric cars do not harm the environment. They are
a. bad b. noisy c. fast d. eco-friendly
- 4 A/An car can react automatically with traffic lights.
a. self-driving b. empty c. full d. broken

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

harm – powered – energy – reduce – vehicles

Nowadays, transportation is smarter and more eco-friendly. People travel on electric buses, self-driving cars, and monorails ⁽¹⁾ by renewable energy from the sun and wind. These ⁽²⁾ produce no smoke or noise. They help ⁽³⁾ pollution and keep cities green. In the future, I think that smart systems will guide traffic safely, saving time and ⁽⁴⁾ The world will move smarter and cleaner than ever before.

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

- some cars today are even self-driving

4 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 1 Why are eco-friendly vehicles important?

- 2 How can self-driving cars make travel safer in the future?

B Pronunciation

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردّد:



Play Audio

Triphthongs الأصوات الثلاثية

- A triphthong is a vowel sound that combines three vowel sounds together in one syllable. الصوت الثلاثي هو صوت متحرك يجمع ثلاثة أصوات متحركة معًا في مقطع صوتي واحد.

ow-er /aʊər/



hour

ساعة



our

ملكنا/خاصتنا



flower

زهرة

ay-er /eɪər/



layer

طبقة



player

لاعب



mayor

محافظ

Extra Words

كلمات إضافية

ow-er /aʊər/

tower

برج

sour

حامض

shower

دش/حمام

power

قوة

ay-er /eɪər/

slayer

قاتل/سفاح

Tryout



Listen and circle the word with the odd triphthong out:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي بها الصوت الثلاثي المختلف:



Play Audio

1 tower – our – mayor – sour

2 player – shower – slayer – layer

2. shower

1. mayor

Answers:

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

In the future, people may travel in a new vehicle called the Solar Car. It's a small, eco-friendly car powered by solar and electric energy. The Solar Car will move quietly through the city, reducing pollution and avoiding traffic because of its small size. It may be self-driving with smart cameras that guide it safely on the road. Inside, there will be digital screens and comfortable seats. Powered by sunlight, the Solar Car will make travel faster, cleaner, and smarter. It will help protect the planet and keep the air clean and fresh for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The Solar Car will use energy.
a. harmful b. renewable c. polluted d. non-renewable
- 2 The opposite of the underlined word "quietly" is ".....".
a. loudly b. clearly c. slowly d. beautifully

B Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- 3 What will help the self-driving Solar Car avoid traffic?

.....

- 4 Why is the Solar Car considered an eco-friendly vehicle?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- 1 use – Electric buses – less – trains – fuel. – and

.....

- 2 are – renewable – Many – using – countries – energy.

.....



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

New Vocabulary مفردات جديدة

vision	رؤية	idea	فكرة	comfortably	براحة
technology	تكنولوجيا	mobile apps	تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول	signs	لافتات
travelers	مسافرون	line	طابور/خط	seat belts	أحزمة الأمان
streets	شوارع	smart cards	بطاقات ذكية		

Adjectives الصفات

underground	تحت الأرض	quieter	أهدأ	crowded	مزدحم
-------------	-----------	---------	------	---------	-------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
imagine يتخيل	imagined	imagined
carry يحمل	carried	carried
wait ينتظر	waited	waited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wear يرتدي	wore	worn
tell يخبر/يقول	told	told

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

I hope you're doing well.	أتمنى أن تكون بخير.	in just minutes	في دقائق معدودة
make ... easier	يجعل ... أسهل	green future	مستقبل نظيف
Best wishes,	مع أطيب التمنيات،		



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

New Message

From : friend@example.com

To : friend@example.com

Subject : My Vision for Egypt's Future Transportation → **Clear Subject**
عنوان واضح

Dear Nada, → **Greeting** تحية

How are you? I hope you're doing well. → **Friendly Opening**
جملة افتتاحية ودية

I want to tell you about my idea for Egypt's future transportation. → **Topic Introduction**
مقدمة الموضوع

In the future, I imagine Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel. → **Main Idea** فكرة رئيسية

There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably. These vehicles will use renewable energy, so the air will be cleaner and the streets quieter, with much less pollution. Technology will also make travel easier. Passengers will pay for tickets using smart cards or mobile apps. The stations will have digital signs in both English and Arabic to help travelers. People must wait in line, mustn't block the doors, and must wear seat belts in cars. If Egypt builds more eco-friendly transportation, the streets will be less crowded and the environment will be better for everyone. → **Details**
تفاصيل

I'm really excited about this smart and green future! → **Personal Opinion**
رأي شخصي

Best wishes, → **Closing** خاتمة

Dina → **Signature** توقيع

عزيزتي ندى،
كيف حالك؟ أتمنى أن تكوني بخير.
أريد أن أخبرك عن فكري بشأن وسائل المواصلات المستقبلية في مصر. أتخيل أن مصر ستمتع بطرق أسرع، أنظف، وأذكى للسفر. ستكون هناك قطارات كهربائية تحت الأرض تربط بين المدن في دقائق فقط، وحافلات ذاتية القيادة تنقل الركاب بأمان وراحة. ستستخدم هذه المركبات طاقة متجددة، لذا سيكون الهواء أنظف والشوارع أهدأ وأقل تلوثاً بصورة كبيرة. ستجعل التكنولوجيا السفر أسهل أيضاً. سيدفع الركاب ثمن التذاكر باستخدام البطاقات الذكية أو تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول. سيكون هناك لافتات رقمية في المحطات باللغتين الإنجليزية والعربية لمساعدة المسافرين. يجب على الناس الانتظار في طابور، وعدم سد الأبواب، ويجب أن يربطوا أحزمة الأمان في السيارات. إذا أنشأت مصر وسائل مواصلات أكثر صداقة للبيئة، فستصبح الشوارع أقل ازدحاماً وستصبح البيئة أفضل للجميع. أنا متحمسة جداً لهذا المستقبل الذكي والنظيف! أطيع التمنيات،
دينا

Send



Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for writing an email

نصائح لكتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني



- Write a greeting (Dear...,).
اكتب تحية (عزيزي...).
- Ex: Dear Nada,
ابدأ بفتاحية ودية.
- Begin with a friendly opening.
اكتب أفكارًا واضحة حول الموضوع.
- Ex: How are you? I hope you're doing well.
- Write clear ideas about the subject.
اكتب أفكارًا واضحة حول الموضوع.
- Ex: In the future, I imagine Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel.
- End the email with a positive closing.
اختتم رسالة البريد الإلكتروني بخاتمة إيجابية.
- Ex: Best wishes,
استخدم علامات الترقيم والحروف الكبيرة بشكل صحيح.
- Use punctuation and capital letters correctly.
Ex: If Egypt builds more eco-friendly transportation, the streets will be less crowded.

Read and notice the following tips:

اقرأ ولاحظ النصائح الآتية:

Tips for creating a brochure about future transportation

نصائح لإعداد منشور عن وسائل المواصلات المستقبلية



- Include these in your brochure:
ضمّن الآتي في المنشور الخاص بك:
- 1 **Cover Page**
صفحة الغلاف
- Title: Future Egypt 2050
العنوان: مصر المستقبلية 2050
- Picture/drawing of future transportation
صورة/رسم لوسائل المواصلات المستقبلية
- Your name as an editor
اسمك بصفتك محرر
- 2 **New Vehicles**
المركبات الجديدة
- Describe 2 new vehicles
صف مركبتين جديدتين
- Add drawings/pictures
أضف رسومات/صور
- 3 **Transportation Rules**
قواعد وسائل المواصلات
- Add small signs/icons
أضف لافتات/أيقونات
- 4 **Benefits for the Environment**
فوائد للبيئة
- Explain how future transportation helps Egypt
اشرح كيف تساعد وسائل المواصلات المستقبلية مصر
- Use "If...will" sentences
استخدم الجمل "If...will"



Ex:

title

عنوان

Cover Page

صفحة الغلاف

Future Egypt 2050

مصر المستقبلية 2050



Edited by: ...

خُرر بواسطة: ...

New Vehicles

مركبات جديدة



In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more safely.

في المستقبل، قد تساعد السيارات ذاتية القيادة الناس على السفر بأمان أكثر.



Flying taxis will carry people quickly above the crowded streets.

ستنقل سيارات الأجرة الطائرة الناس بسرعة فوق الشوارع المزدحمة.

drawings/pictures

رسومات/صور

signs/icons

لافتات/أيقونات

Transportation Rules

قواعد وسائل المواصلات



3D transportation signs will guide drivers safely.

ستوجّه لافتات وسائل المواصلات ثلاثية الأبعاد السائقين بأمان.

Benefits for the Environment

فوائد للبيئة



If we use eco-friendly transportation, the world will be a cleaner and safer place.

إذا استخدمنا وسائل مواصلات صديقة للبيئة، فسيكون العالم مكاناً أنظف وأكثر أماناً.

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

carry – travels – connect – cards – travelers

In the future, Egypt will have faster and cleaner transportation. Electric trains will (1) cities and self-driving buses will (2) passengers safely. Smart stations will use digital screens to give (3) the information they need. People will pay with smart (4) or mobile apps. These eco-friendly systems will reduce pollution and traffic, making travel easier and better for everyone.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جُملاً:

1 streets – less – The – crowded. – be – will

2 smart – I'm – about – future! – this – and green – excited

3 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لما يلي:

• i hope you're doing well

4 Write an email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني من ستين (60) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات أدناه:

Your name is Samir and your email address is (samir@yahoo.com). Your friend's name is Ali and his email address is (ali@yahoo.com).

"Green Transportation"

(green – comfortably)

From :

To :

Subject:

Unit 5 Review

Vocabulary

announcement	إعلان	passengers	ركاب	ticket machine	آلة تذاكر
elevator	مصعد	digital screen	شاشة رقمية	escalator	سلم متحرك/كهربائي
pay by card	يدفع بالبطاقة البنكية	smart doors	أبواب ذكية	track	مسار
transportation	وسائل المواصلات	systems	أنظمة	monorail	مونوريل (قطار أحادي السكة)
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	pollution	تلوث	self-driving	ذاتية القيادة
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	vehicles	مركبات	generations	أجيال
petrol	بنزين	streets	شوارع	diesel	ديزل
seat belts	أحزمة أمان	vision	رؤية	line	طاوور/خط
accidents	حوادث	single	أحادي/فردى	properly	بشكل صحيح

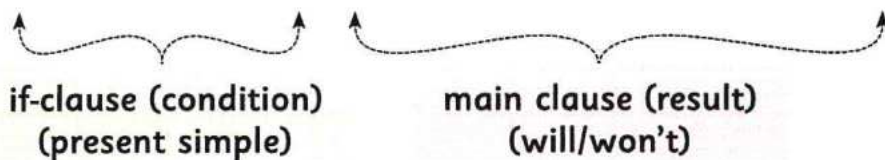
Language

First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

- We use the First Conditional to talk about possible situations in the future.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن مواقف محتملة الوقوع في المستقبل.

If + **present simple**, **will/won't** + base form of the verb



Ex: – If you **take** the monorail, you **will** arrive faster.

– If we **use** electric buses, the environment **will be** cleaner.



Reading in Points

Lesson 1

Next Stop, Giza

- The new Green Line in the Cairo Metro is faster and cleaner.

الخط الأخضر الجديد لمترو القاهرة أسرع وأنظف.

- New trains have digital screens and smart doors. المترو الجديد به شاشات رقمية وأبواب ذكية.
- People can pay by card, phone, or in cash. يمكن للناس الدفع بالبطاقة البنكية، الهاتف، أو نقدًا.
- The metro saves electricity, which is better for the environment.

يوفر المترو الكهرباء، والذي يُعتبر أفضل للبيئة.

- Passengers are told to stand back from the doors to stay safe.

يُطلب من الركاب الابتعاد عن الأبواب ليبقوا آمنين.

Lesson 2

Egypt's New Monorail

- Egypt is improving transportation in Cairo and Giza.

تُطور مصر وسائل المواصلات في القاهرة والجيزة.

- The monorail is one of the modern exciting projects. المونوريل هو أحد المشروعات الحديثة والمثيرة.
- The monorail connects important cities quickly. يربط المونوريل بعض المدن المهمة بسرعة.
- Stations have ticket machines, digital screens, elevators, and escalators.

المحطات بها آلات تذاكر، شاشات رقمية، مصاعد، وسلالم متحركة.

- The electric bus uses clean energy and has smart doors and LED lights.

الحافلة الكهربائية تعمل بالطاقة النظيفة ولها أبواب ذكية وأضواء LED (موفرة للطاقة).

- Passengers must follow the rules. They must stand and sit properly.

يجب على الركاب اتباع القواعد. يجب عليهم الوقوف والجلوس بشكل صحيح.

- Passengers should avoid blocking the doors, and they mustn't eat or drink on the bus.

يجب على الركاب تجنب سد الأبواب، ويجب ألا يأكلوا أو يشربوا في الحافلة.

Lesson 3 (A)

Cleaner Transportation, Cleaner Planet

- In the future, people will depend on smarter and cleaner ways to travel.

في المستقبل، سوف يعتمد الناس على طرق أذكى وأنظف للسفر.

- Eco-friendly buses and trains help reduce pollution and noise.

الحافلات والقطارات الصديقة للبيئة تساعد في تقليل التلوث والضوضاء.

- Self-driving cars use cameras and computers to move safely.

السيارات ذاتية القيادة تستخدم الكاميرات وأجهزة الكمبيوتر للتنقل بأمان.

- Renewable energy sources like the sun, wind, and water power modern transportation. مصادر الطاقة المتجددة مثل الشمس، الرياح، والمياه تعمل على تشغيل وسائل المواصلات الحديثة.

- Renewable energy never runs out, and it is better for the planet, unlike different types of fuel like petrol and diesel.

الطاقة المتجددة لا تنفذ أبدًا، وهي أفضل للكوكب، على عكس أنواع الوقود المختلفة مثل البنزين والديزل.

- Using eco-friendly transportation will make Earth cleaner and safer for everyone.

استخدام وسائل المواصلات الصديقة للبيئة سيجعل الأرض أنظف وأمن للجميع.



Dictation

Lesson (1)

إعلان	ركاب
آلة تذاكر	مصعد
شاشة رقمية	سلم متحرك/كهربائي
يدفع بالبطاقة البنكية	أبواب ذكية
كهراء	تلقائياً
وصول/دخول	نقذاً

Lesson (2)

طريقة/أسلوب	وسائل المواصلات
أنظمة	مشروع
مونوريل (قطار أحادي السكة)	مسار
أرض	بسرعة
بشكل صحيح	أحادي/فردى
بدكاء	مثير
براق/زاه	كهربائي

Lesson (3)

صديق للبيئة	تلوث
ذاتية القيادة	طاقة متجددة
مركبات	وقود
ضوضاء	حوادث
أجيال	مصادر

Lessons (4&5)

رؤية	فكرة
براحة	تكنولوجيا
طابور/خط	لافتات
أحزمة الأمان	مسافرون



Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	P.P.	Present	Past	P.P.
travel			reduce		
continue			avoid		
connect			power		
listen			protect		
block			mean		
help			keep		
wear			come		
open			choose		
close			imagine		
use			carry		
save			wait		
stop			tell		
hear			find		
pay			eat		
are			drink		
make			stand		
ride			sit		
change			harm		

Writing Station

حلها صح

هذا الجزء خاص بالتدريب على حل سؤال (Writing) في الورقة الامتحانية

Write a text of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The future of transportation"

1 Think of words related to the topic and sort them in the boxes below.

فكر في كلمات ذات صلة بالموضوع وضمها في الصناديق أدناه.

Nouns

1. pollution
2. vehicles
3. energy

Verbs

1. travel
2. reduce
3. use

Others

1. smartly
2. self-driving
3. eco-friendly

2 Form your sentences.

كوّن جملتك.

Subject (Pronoun/Noun) + verb + the rest of the sentence (تكملة الجملة)

1. People will travel smartly.
3. These vehicles will be eco-friendly.

2. They will travel using electric and self-driving vehicles.
4. They will use renewable energy from the sun and wind.

3 Write your paragraph.

اكتب فقرتك.

I think that transportation in the future will be very different from today. People will travel smartly. They will travel using electric and self-driving vehicles. These vehicles will be eco-friendly. They do not harm the environment. They will use renewable energy from the sun and wind. This will reduce pollution, make less noise, and keep our air clean and fresh.

اكتب بنفسك! Write it yourself!

"The metro in Egypt"

Nouns

1.
2.
3.

Verbs

1.
2.
3.

Others

1.
2.
3.

Your sentences

1.
2.
3.
4.

Your paragraph

فقرتك



Important Paragraphs

Cairo's new metro line

The Cairo Metro has opened a new green line. The new stations and trains have digital screens that show all the information passengers need. Passengers can buy tickets at ticket machines and pay by card, phone, or in cash. With LED lights and smart electricity, the metro saves energy and helps protect the environment. The metro is now faster and cleaner.



Transportation in Egypt

Egypt is improving transportation with new systems like the monorail and electric buses. This will make Cairo and Giza faster, cleaner, and smarter cities. The monorail connects important places quickly, and the electric buses reduce pollution. Thanks to these new systems, Egypt is moving towards a smarter and greener future, making life in the cities more convenient and eco-friendly.



Transportation in the future

In the future, people will use smarter, cleaner, and eco-friendly transportation. Electric and self-driving vehicles will reduce pollution because they use less fuel and make less noise, and they will make travel safer, too. Many countries will use renewable energy from the sun, wind, and water to power these new vehicles. Choosing green transportation will help keep the planet cleaner for future generations.



Smart transportation

People will travel using smarter and cleaner transportation in the future. Eco-friendly vehicles will use less fuel, make less noise, and help reduce pollution. Self-driving cars will use computers and cameras to move safely, which helps them avoid accidents. Passengers at stations will pay for tickets using smart cards or mobile apps, making travel faster for everyone.





Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Circle the word that doesn't have a triphthong sound:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي لا تحتوي على صوت ثلاثي:

- 1 hour – flower – tower – house
- 2 player – layer – mayor – paper
- 3 fire – buyer – fish – higher
- 4 town – tower – shower – power
- 5 buyer – liar – dryer – bus

2 Fill in the blanks with words from the box:

املأ الفراغات بكلمات من الصندوق:

pollution – eco-friendly – renewable energy – Self-driving – safer

- 1 Cars that don't harm the environment are called
- 2 Solar and wind power are examples of
- 3 cars can move without a human driver.
- 4 Reducing helps keep the air clean.
- 5 Using clean transportation makes the world for everyone.

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb: املأ الفراغات بالصيغة الصحيحة للفعل:

- 1 If we (use) the electric bus, the air (be) cleaner.
- 2 If the passenger (listen) to the announcement, he (know) the next stop.
- 3 If passengers (block) the smart doors, the train (not start).
- 4 If Egypt (build) more monorails, people (travel) faster.
- 5 If your dad (pay) by card, he (save) time.

Test

on unit (5)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. ()
2. Electric buses, trains, and self-driving cars will not reduce pollution. ()
3. Many countries will use renewable energy. ()
4. Earth will stay dirty if everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Different often have different ideas.
a. vehicles b. celebrations c. generations d. stations
2. She sat on her soft sofa. She felt relaxed and cozy.
a. comfortably b. noisily c. angrily d. sadly
3. If people bicycles instead of cars, cities will be healthier.
a. riding b. ride c. rides d. rode
4. If you travel to Cairo tomorrow, you see many new transportation systems.
a. are b. will c. have d. were



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

announcements – passengers – electric – monorail – environment

My name is Adam. I live in Egypt. I think Egypt is changing the way people travel. The ⁽¹⁾ moves quickly on a single track and connects important places in Cairo and Giza. At each station, ⁽²⁾ can hear important announcements about travel times and next stops. The new ⁽³⁾ bus runs on electricity instead of petrol, helping keep the air clean and the ⁽⁴⁾ safe.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

In the near future, cities will become cleaner and quieter as people use smarter transportation. Many new vehicles are eco-friendly, which means they protect nature and reduce pollution. Electric cars and buses are quiet and use less fuel, helping the air stay fresh. Some cars are self-driving, using technology to move safely without a driver. Renewable energy, such as the sun, wind, and water, is also being used to power transportation systems. If everyone chooses eco-friendly vehicles and renewable energy, the planet will be safer, cleaner, and healthier for future generations.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is mainly about
 a. future technology b. eco-friendly transportation
 c. ancient vehicles d. renewable energy
- The underlined word "reduce" means ".....".
 a. increase b. make less c. destroy d. make more

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What kind of cars move safely without a driver?

- What are some examples of renewable energy sources?

- Why are electric vehicles better for the environment?

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. If it (rain) tomorrow, we won't go to the park.
2. If we go to Cairo, we (visit) the museum.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. will – Passengers – smart – using – cards. – pay for – tickets
.....

2. Giza Metro – faster – is – and – cleaner. – The – now
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. have you ever ridden on the metro before
.....

2. we can help reduce pollution and protect earth.
.....

8 Write an email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

Your name is Farida and your email address is (farida@yahoo.com). Your friend's name is Amal and her email address is (amal@yahoo.com).

“Green Transportation”

(self-driving – renewable energy)

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

monorail – faster – harmful – electric – eco-friendly – renewable

Teacher: How will transportation be in the future, Omar?

Omar : I think it will be ⁽¹⁾ and cleaner.

Teacher: What kind of vehicles will people use?

Omar : They will use ⁽²⁾ buses, and there will be a fast ⁽³⁾ in every city.

Teacher: Will this be good for the environment?

Omar : Yes, it will be ⁽⁴⁾ as vehicles will run on ⁽⁵⁾ energy.

(B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If you use eco-friendly transportation, you (**could**) help reduce pollution.
- If people (**used**) electric cars, the air will be cleaner.
- If we plant more trees, the world will (**became**) greener.
- If you (**haven't**) wear a jacket, you will get cold.
- If I study hard, I (**would**) fail the exam.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- The new metro in Cairo makes travel faster and easier.
a. line b. image c. vision d. idea
- The train was full of going to work.
a. systems b. ideas c. passengers d. doors
- The engineer's for future transportation is amazing.
a. vision b. mystery c. escalator d. layer
- The airport made a/an about the flight delay.
a. screen b. light c. sign d. announcement



5. Most malls have for visitors to move easily between floors.
a. televisions b. trains c. escalators d. transportation
6. If we save money, we will a new car.
a. buy b. buys c. bought d. buying
7. If you too much sugar, you will get sick.
a. ate b. eating c. eats d. eat
8. If he runs fast, he win the race.
a. will b. did c. do d. does
9. If the weather isn't nice, we have a picnic.
a. don't b. will c. doesn't d. won't
10. If you touch that wire, you hurt.
a. will get b. get c. getting d. got

(C) ■■ Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. monorail – train – cinema – taxi (.....)
2. ticket machine – cash – elevator – escalator (.....)
3. stay – stand – sit – faster (.....)
4. safe – smartly – comfortably – quickly (.....)
5. easier – smart – faster – cleaner (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the future, Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel. Electric trains will connect cities in minutes, and self-driving buses will carry passengers safely and comfortably. These vehicles will use renewable energy, making the air cleaner and reducing pollution. Technology will make travel easier as passengers will pay for any service with smart cards or mobile apps. Stations will have digital signs in English and Arabic to guide travelers. With more eco-friendly transportation, the environment will be healthier for everyone.

**(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) false:**

1. In the future, Egypt will have slower and dirtier ways to travel. ()
2. Passengers will use smart cards or mobile apps to pay for tickets. ()
3. The new vehicles will use renewable energy to keep the air clean. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The self-driving buses will carry passengers
a. dangerously b. slowly c. safely d. carelessly
5. The digital signs in stations will be written in languages.
a. two b. three c. four d. five

(D) Writing**6 Write an email of FIVE (5) sentences:**

Your name is Hana and your email address is (hana@yahoo.com). Your friend's name is Amira and her email address is (amira@gmail.com).

"Transportation in the future"

(passengers – metro – cleaner – pay – environment)

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

6 Unit

The Library That Time Forgot



Learning Outcomes

نتائج التعلم

Speaking & Listening

- Retell the sequence of events using target vocabulary
- Discuss key story elements (characters, setting, and events) using simple language
- Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events
- Discuss the moral of the story

• إعادة سرد تسلسل الأحداث باستخدام المفردات المستهدفة

• مناقشة عناصر القصة الرئيسية (الشخصيات، المكان، والأحداث) باستخدام لغة بسيطة

• طرح أسئلة بسيطة عن الشخصيات والأحداث والإجابة عنها

• مناقشة العبرة من القصة

Reading

- Understand and define new vocabulary words in context
- Identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a story
- Answer comprehension questions about the story
- Identify supporting details from a story read aloud
- Recall story events in the correct order after listening
- Identify the character who speaks in a story dialog read aloud

• فهم وتعريف مفردات جديدة في سياق

• تحديد الشخصيات الرئيسية، المكان، والأحداث الرئيسية في قصة

• إجابة أسئلة الفهم عن القصة

• تحديد تفاصيل داعمة من قصة مقروءة بصوت عالي

• ذكر أحداث قصة بالترتيب الصحيح بعد الاستماع

• تحديد الشخصية التي تتحدث في محادثة قصة مقروءة بصوت عالي

Writing

- Complete sentences using vocabulary from the story
- Write a paragraph about the story using target vocabulary words and past simple tense

• إكمال الجمل باستخدام مفردات القصة

• كتابة فقرة عن القصة باستخدام مفردات مستهدفة وزمن الماضي البسيط

Story Elements عناصر القصة

- A group of friends found a key to an old library in their town. They opened it and discovered dusty books, maps, and guides. They used what they learned to help fix the town's fountain. With the support of the townspeople, they cleaned and reopened the library. They were the volunteers who shared its treasures with everyone.

• عثرت مجموعة من الأصدقاء على مفتاح مكتبة قديمة في بلدتهم. فتحوها واكتشفوا كتباً مُتَرَبَّة، خرائط، وأدلة. استخدموا ما تعلموه للمساعدة في إصلاح نافورة البلدة. بدعم من أهل البلدة. نظفوا المكتبة وأعادوا فتحها. كانوا المتطوعين الذين شاركوا كنوزها مع الجميع.

Main Characters الشخصيات الرئيسية



Adam



Lara



Ziad



Hana



Fady

Other Characters شخصيات أخرى

- The teacher, the school principal, and the townspeople

المعلم، مدير المدرسة، وأهل البلدة



Setting مكان الأحداث

- A small town known for its colorful markets and friendly people, mainly the old, dusty library in the town square

بلدة صغيرة معروفة بأسواقها الزاهية وسكانها الودودين، وبشكل خاص المكتبة القديمة، المُتَرِّبة في ميدان البلدة

Plot الحبكة

- The friends find an old key that opens a forgotten library. Inside, they discover books, maps, and letters. They use what they learn to help their town and reopen the library.

يعثر الأصدقاء على مفتاح قديم يفتح مكتبة منسية. في داخلها، يكتشفون كتبًا، خرائط، ورسائل. يستخدمون ما يتعلمونه لمساعدة بلدتهم وإعادة فتح المكتبة.

Problem المشكلة

- The library is closed and forgotten, and the town's fountain is broken.

المكتبة مُغلقة ومنسية، ونافورة البلدة معطلة.

Solution الحل

- The children use knowledge from the library to fix the fountain and bring the library back to life.

يستخدم الأطفال المعرفة التي اكتسبوها من المكتبة لإصلاح النافورة وإعادة المكتبة إلى الحياة.

The moral of the story العبرة (الدرس المستفاد) من القصة

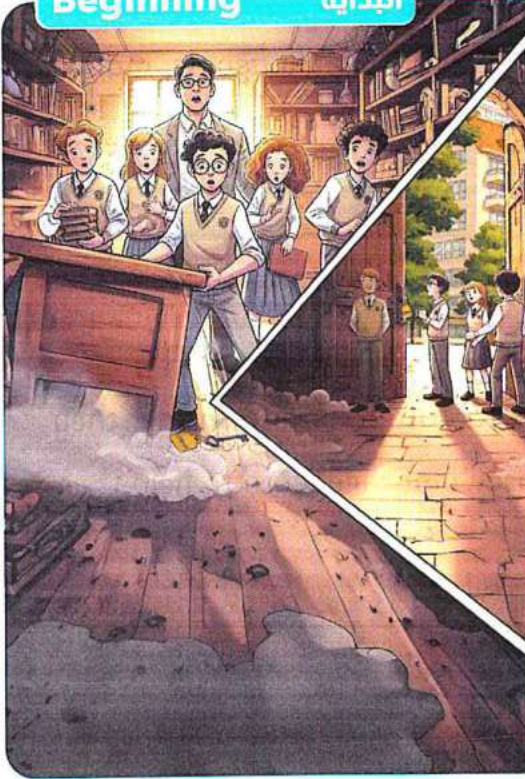
- Working together and learning can help the community.

التعاون والتعلم يمكن أن يساعدوا في خدمة المجتمع.



Beginning

البداية



In a small town, five friends—Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady—discovered an old bronze key while helping clean their school's storage room. The key was labeled "Library". They believed it might open the forgotten library in the town square. They were excited. They tried it. The door creaked open.

في بلدة صغيرة، اكتشف خمسة أصدقاء - آدم، لارا، زياد، هانا، وفادي - مفتاحاً برونزياً قديماً أثناء مساعدتهم في تنظيف مخزن مدرستهم. حمل المفتاح علامة «مكتبة». اعتقدوا أنه قد يفتح المكتبة المنسية في ميدان البلدة. كانوا متحمسين، جربوه. فصدر عن الباب صرير وهو يُفتح.

Middle

الوسط



Inside the dusty old library, the children found maps, letters from travelers, books on science, and more. They explored its treasures daily, learning about the world and experimenting with ideas. When the town fountain stopped working, they used knowledge from the library to help fix it, impressing the townspeople.

داخل المكتبة القديمة المتربة، عثر الأطفال على خرائط، رسائل من رحالة، كتب علمية، وغيرها الكثير. كانوا يستكشفون كنوزها يومياً، ويتعلمون عن العالم ويجربون الأفكار. عندما توقفت نافورة البلدة عن العمل، استخدموا المعرفة التي اكتسبوها من المكتبة للمساعدة في إصلاحها، مما أثار إعجاب أهل البلدة.



End

النهاية



News of the children's discoveries spread. The school principal visited the library and agreed that it should be reopened. With the help of the whole town, the library was cleaned and restored. The children became its first official volunteers. At the reopening, Fady said that the key didn't just unlock a door—it opened their minds.

انتشرت أخبار اكتشافات الأطفال. زار مدير المدرسة المكتبة ووافق على وجوب إعادة فتحها. بمساعدة البلدة بأكملها، تم تنظيف المكتبة وترميمها. أصبح الأطفال أول متطوعين رسميين فيها. عند إعادة الافتتاح، قال فادي: إن المفتاح لم يفتح باباً فحسب—بل فتح عقولهم أيضاً.

Story Vocabulary مفردات القصة

Listen, look, and repeat:

استمع، انظر وردد:



Play Audio



dust تراب/غبار



library مكتبة



rusty صدئ



windmill طاحونة هوائية



pipe ماسورة



plumber سباك



treasure كنز



fountain نافورة



town مدينة صغيرة/بلدة



Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

steps	درجات سلم	floor	أرضية	key	مفتاح
tag	علامة/بطاقة	square	ميدان	looks	نظرات
lock	قفل	shelves	أرفف	space	مساحة/فراغ
object	شيء	history	تاريخ	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
shutters	نوافذ/مصاريع	knowledge	معرفة	maps	خرائط
ribbon	شريط	collection	مجموعة	letters	خطابات
machines	آلات	travelers	مسافرون/رحالة	diagrams	مخططات
events	أحداث	minds	عقول	plants	نباتات
ideas	أفكار	guide	دليل	discoveries	اكتشافات
sheet of paper	ورقة	science experiments	تجارب علمية	reopening ceremony	حفلة إعادة الافتتاح

Adjectives الصفات

colorful	ملون/زاه	friendly	ودود	locked	مُغلق
shiny	لامع	bronze	برونزي	wooden	خشبي
deep	عميق	thick	سميك	simple	بسيط
historical	تاريخي	surprised	متفاجئ	alive	تنبض بالحياة
official	رسمي	shuttered	مُغلق/مُقفَل	handwritten	مكتوب بخط اليد

**Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال**Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
gather يتجمع	gathered	gathered
sparkle يتلألأ	sparkled	sparkled
whisper يهمس	whispered	whispered
exchange يتبادل	exchanged	exchanged
hurry يسرع	hurried	hurried
fill يملأ	filled	filled
stream يتدفق/يتسلل	streamed	streamed
unroll يفرّد/يفتح	unrolled	unrolled
shape يشكّل	shaped	shaped
cheer يهتف فرحاً	cheered	cheered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
slide يدخل/يزلق	slid	slid
spread ينتشر	spread	spread

Important expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر مهمة

in the heart of في قلب/وسط	known for معروف بـ
in the back of في الجزء الخلفي	full of مليء بـ
stepped into دخل إلى	from long ago منذ زمن بعيد
tied with مربوط بـ	heard of سمع عن
Over the next week, خلال الأسبوع التالي،	learned about تعلّم عن
eyes wide عيان متسعان (تعبير يدل على الدهشة)	smelled of له رائحة
light up يضيء	figured out اكتشف
hold ... up يرفع ...	

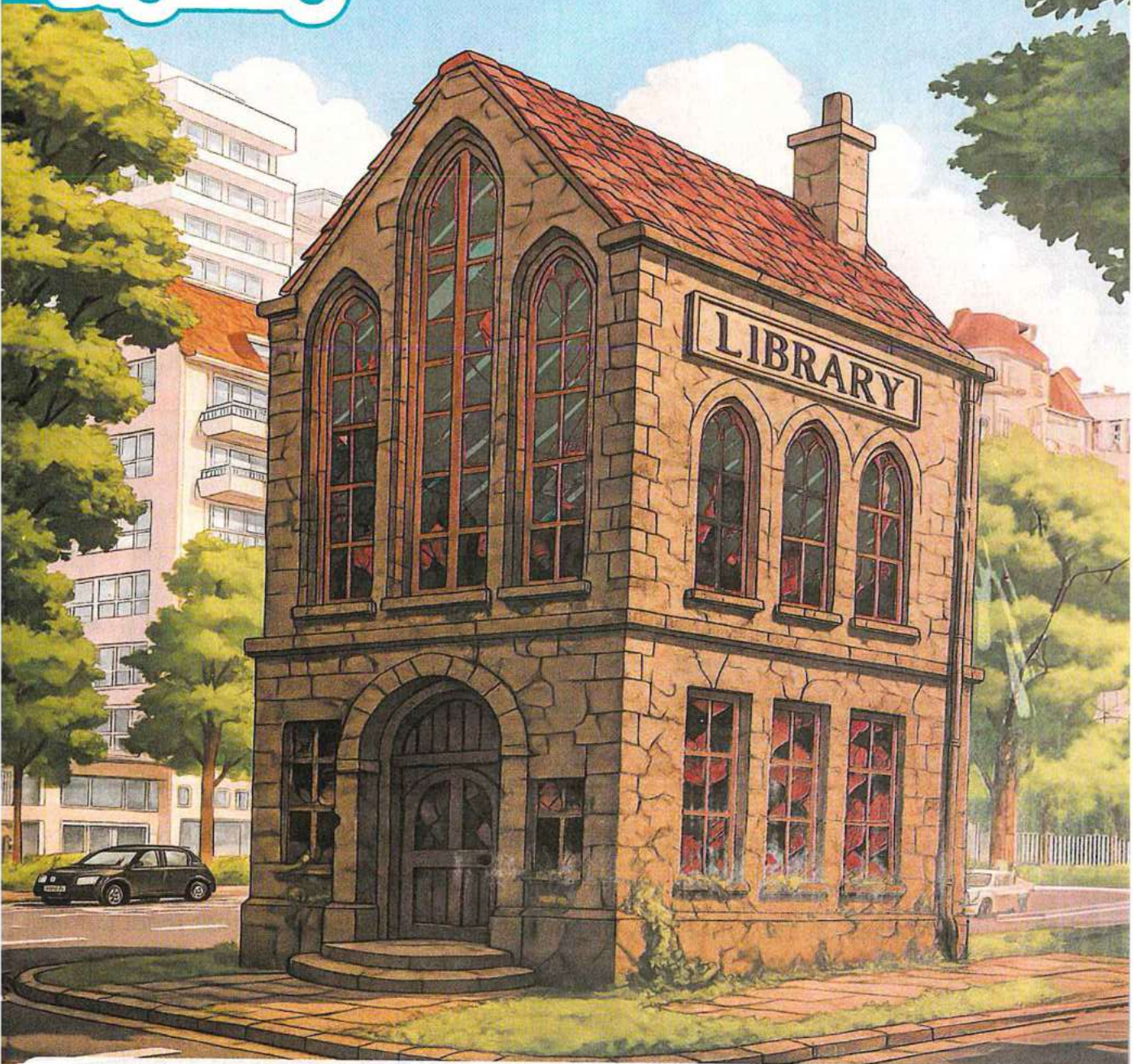


Definitions

تعريفات

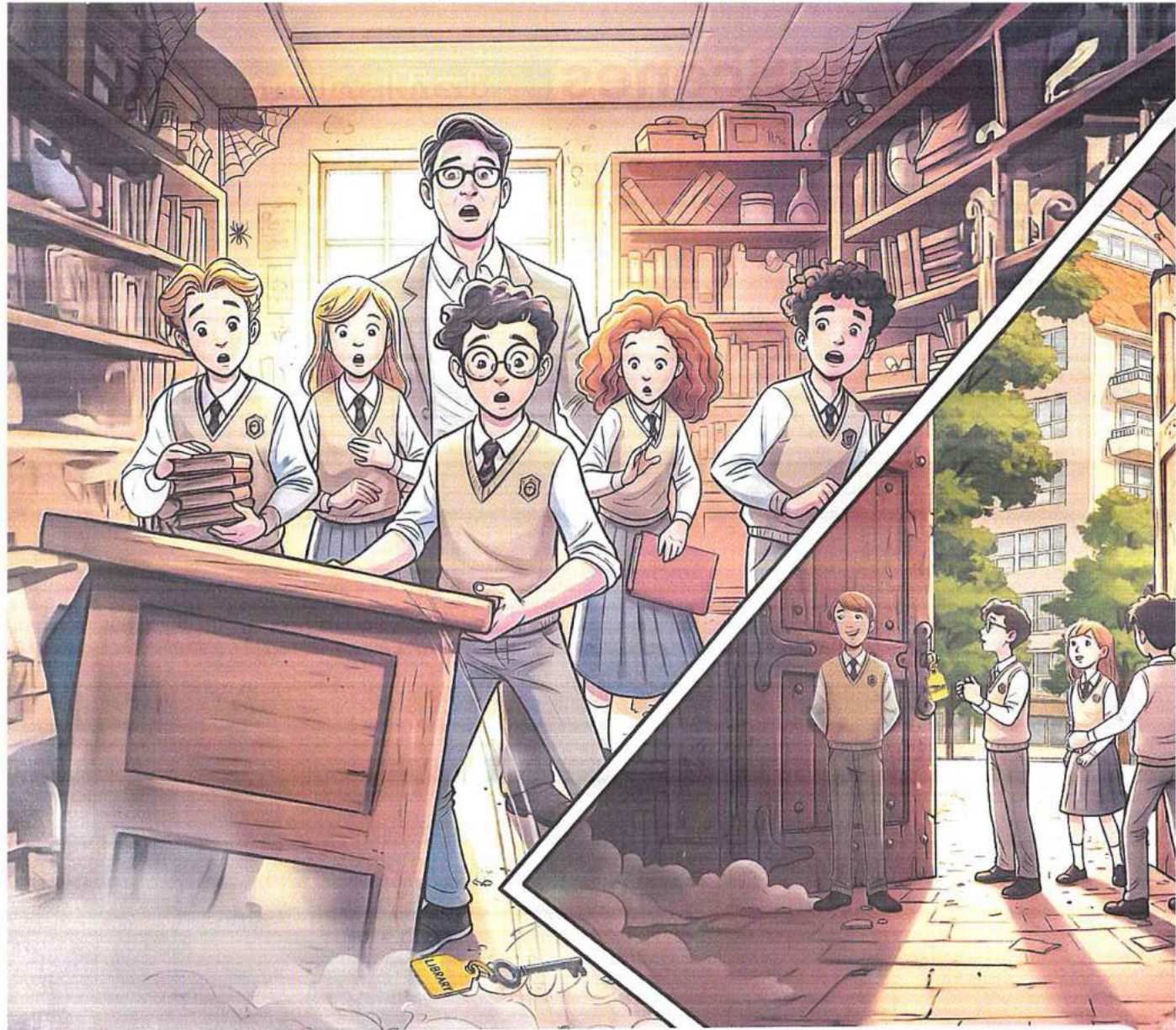
dust	تراب/غبار	tiny particles that collect on surfaces when they are not cleaned جزيئات صغيرة تتجمع على الأسطح عندما لا يتم تنظيفها
storage	مخزن	a place where things are kept until they are needed مكان يتم فيه الاحتفاظ بالأشياء لحين الحاجة إليها
rusty	صدئ	covered with reddish-brown spots from metal getting old and wet مغطاة ببقع بُنية حمراء اللون من المعدن الذي أصبح قديمًا ومبللًا
clinked	اصطدم	made a short, ringing sound, like metal hitting metal أصدر صوت رنين، قصير، مثل المعدن الذي يصطدم بالمعدن
library	مكتبة	a place where books are kept for people to read or borrow مكان تُحفظ فيه الكتب ليقرأها الناس أو يستعيرونها
creak	صرير	a long, squeaky sound made when something like a door opens or closes صوت حاد طويل، يصدر عندما يفتح أو يغلق شيء مثل الباب
stacks	أكوام	piles or groups of things placed one on top of another أكوام أو مجموعات من الأشياء توضع فوق بعضها بعضًا
windmill	طاحونة هوائية	a machine with blades that turn in the wind, often used to make power or pump water آلة ذات شفرات تدور في الريح، تُستخدم غالبًا لتوليد الطاقة أو ضخ المياه
volunteers	متطوعون	people who offer to do work or help without being paid الأشخاص الذين يعرضون القيام بعمل أو المساعدة دون الحصول على أجر
town	مدينة صغيرة/بلدة	a place where people live that is smaller than a city but bigger than a village مكان يعيش فيه الناس، أصغر من المدينة ولكنه أكبر من القرية
clogged	مسدود	blocked so that nothing can pass through مسدود بحيث لا يمكن لأي شيء أن يمر من خلاله
pipe	أنبوب/ماسورة	a long, hollow tube used to carry liquids from one place to another أنبوب طويل، مجوف يُستخدم لنقل السوائل من مكان إلى آخر
fountain	نافورة	a structure that sends water up into the air هيكل يرسل المياه إلى الهواء

Beginning



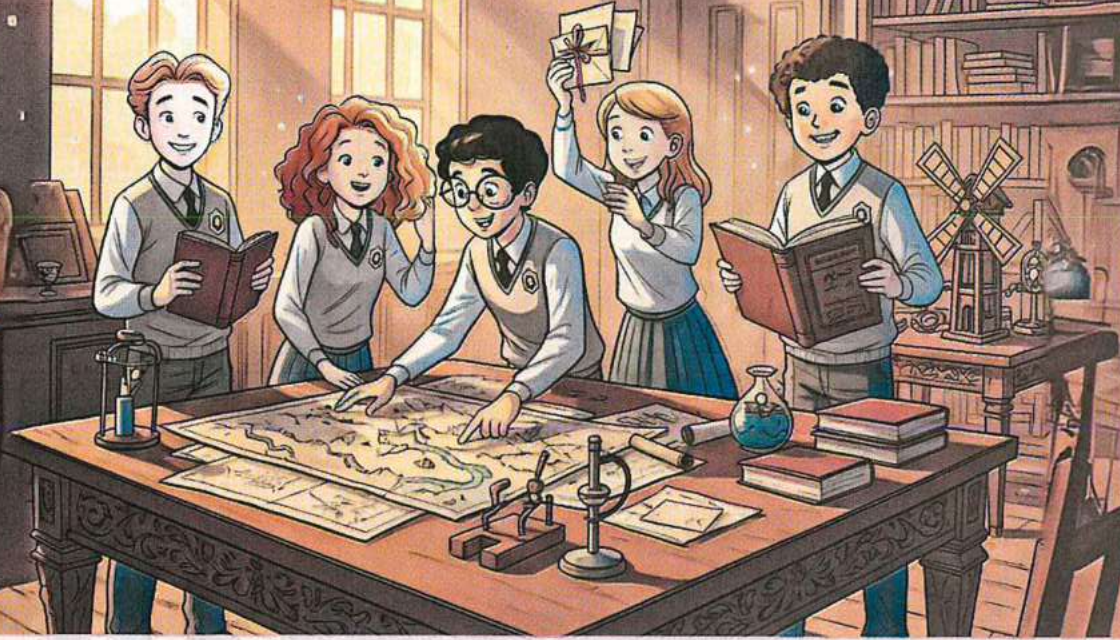
In the heart of a small town known for its colorful markets and friendly people, there stood an old library with locked doors and shuttered windows. Dust gathered on its steps, and most people had forgotten it was even there.

في قلب بلدة صغيرة معروفة بأسواقها الزاهية وسكانها الودودين، كانت هناك مكتبة قديمة قائمة ذات أبواب مغلقة ونوافذ مقفلة. تجفّع التراب على درجاتها، ونسي معظم الناس حتى أنها كانت موجودة.



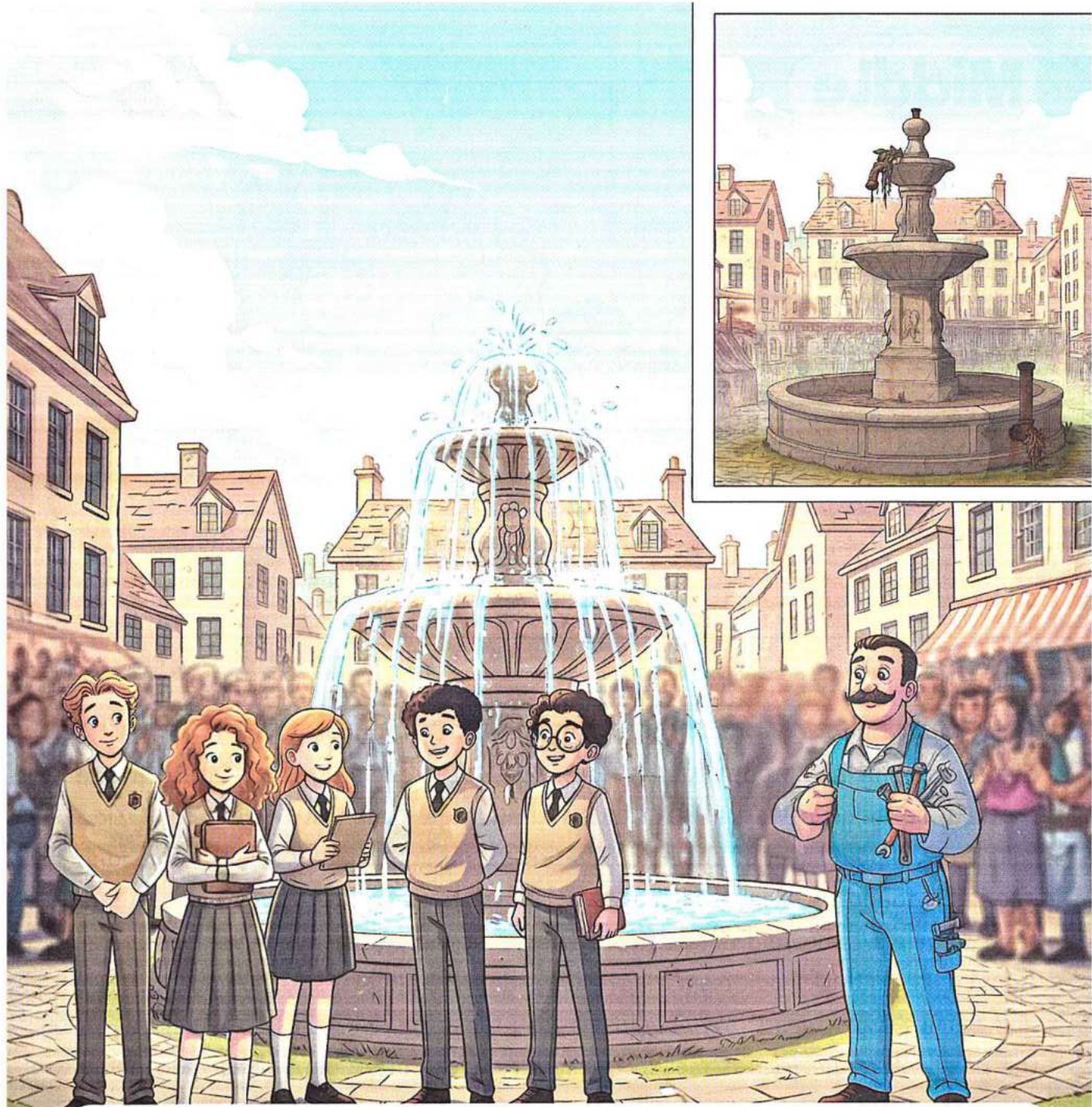
One warm afternoon, Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady were helping their teacher clean the school's storage room. As Ziad moved an old desk, a rusty object clinked onto the floor. "Look, there's something shiny in the back of the desk. It's a key!" Lara exclaimed, holding it up. It was large and bronze, with a tag that read: Library. "Do you think it could open the old library in the square?" Hana whispered. The friends exchanged excited looks. After school, they hurried to the library's heavy wooden doors. Fady slid the key into the lock. With a deep creak, the door was open.

بعد ظهر أحد الأيام الدافئة، كان آدم، لارا، زياد، هانا، وفادي يساعدون معلمهم في تنظيف مخزن المدرسة. بينما كان زياد يحرك مكتباً قديماً، اصطدم شيء صدئ بالأرض. صاحبت لارا، وهي ترفعه: «انظروا، يوجد شيء لامع في الجزء الخلفي من المكتب. إنه مفتاح!». كان كبيراً وبرونزياً، وعليه بطاقة كتب عليها: مكتبة. همست هانا: «هل تعتقدون أنه يمكن أن يفتح المكتبة القديمة في الميدان؟» تبادل الأصدقاء نظرات الحماس. بعد المدرسة، سارعوا إلى أبواب المكتبة الخشبية الثقيلة. قام فادي بإدخال المفتاح في القفل. مع صرير عميق، انفتح الباب.



They stepped into a big room full of tall shelves. Dusty books filled every space, and the air smelled of paper and history. Sunlight streamed through cracks in the shutters, lighting up stacks of forgotten knowledge. "Look at these maps!" Ziad called, unrolling a sheet of paper showing rivers, mountains, and villages from long ago. Lara found a collection of handwritten letters tied with a ribbon. "These are from travelers," she said, eyes wide. "They describe places I've never heard of." Adam pulled a thick book from the shelf. Inside were diagrams for simple machines and science experiments. "We could actually make some of these," he said. Over the next week, the friends met in the library every afternoon. They read about plants that could clean water, built a small windmill from one of the diagrams, and learned about historical events that shaped their town.

دخلوا إلى غرفة كبيرة مليئة بالأرفف العالية. ملأت الكتب المتربة كل مكان، وكان للهواء رائحة الورق والتاريخ. تسَلَّل ضوء الشمس من خلال شقوق النوافذ، مُضيئاً أكواماً من المعرفة المنسية. نادى زياد، وهو يفرد ورقة تُظهر أنهاراً، جبلاً، وقرى من زمن بعيد: «انظروا إلى هذه الخرائط!». عثرت لارا على مجموعة من الخطابات المكتوبة بخط اليد مربوطة بشريط. قالت وعيناها متسعتان: «هذه من رُحالة. يصفون أماكن لم أسمع عنها من قبل». سحب آدم كتاباً سميكاً من الرف. كان بداخله مخططات بيانية لآلات بسيطة وتجارب علمية. قال: «يمكننا في الواقع أن نصنع بعضاً من هذه». خلال الأسبوع التالي، التقى الأصدقاء في المكتبة كل يوم بعد الظهر. قرأوا عن نباتات يمكنها تنقية الماء، بنوا طاحونة هوائية صغيرة من أحد المخططات البيانية، وتعلَّموا عن أحداث تاريخية التي شكَّلت بلدتهم.



One day, Hana noticed the fountain in the town square wasn't working. Using a guide from the library, they figured out the problem was a clogged pipe. With the help of a local plumber, they fixed it. Soon, the fountain's water sparkled in the sunlight, and the townspeople cheered. Word spread quickly about the children's discoveries.

في أحد الأيام، لاحظت هنا أن النافورة الموجودة في ميدان البلدة لا تعمل. باستخدام دليل من المكتبة، اكتشفوا أن المشكلة كانت في ماسورة مسدودة. وبمساعدة سبّاك محلي، قاموا بإصلاحها. سرعان ما تلالأت مياه النافورة في ضوء الشمس، وهتف أهل البلدة فرحاً. انتشر الخبر بسرعة عن اكتشافات الأطفال.

End

The school principal visited the library, surprised to see it alive again. "This place is a treasure," he said. "It should be open to everyone." "Let's ask the townspeople to help, we can all work together to fix it," Adam said. With the town's help, the library was cleaned, repaired, and reopened. The friends became its first official volunteers, helping others find books, maps, and ideas. As they stood together at the reopening ceremony, Fady smiled. "We thought the key only opened a door," he said, "but it actually opened our minds."

زار مدير المدرسة المكتبة، تفاعلاً لرؤيتها تنبض بالحياة مرة أخرى. قال: «هذا المكان كنز. يجب أن يكون مفتوحاً للجميع». قال آدم: «هياً نطلب المساعدة من أهل البلدة، يمكننا جميعاً أن نعمل معاً لإصلاحها». بمساعدة أهل البلدة، تم تنظيف المكتبة وإصلاحها وإعادة فتحها. أصبح الأصدقاء أول متطوعين رسميين، يساعدون الآخرين في العثور على الكتب، الخرائط، والأفكار. بينما وقفوا معاً في حفل إعادة الافتتاح، ابتسم فادي. قال: «كنا نظن أن المفتاح فتح باباً فقط، لكنه في الواقع فتح عقولنا».

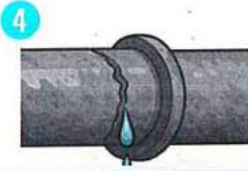
Story Practice

Vocabulary

1 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:

dust – library – rusty – windmill – pipe –
plumber – treasure – fountain – town



2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق:

rusty – clogged – shutters – library – clinked

- 1 You can read or borrow books at the
- 2 Sunlight streamed through cracks in the
- 3 The key is It's covered with reddish-brown spots.
- 4 There was something that onto the floor.
- 5 The fountain was with leaves and mud.



Characters of the story

1 Read, look, and number:

اقرأ، انظر ورقم:

1 Ziad

2 Hana

3 Fady

4 Lara

5 Adam

a



b



c



d



e



2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

(A)

(B)

1 Hana ...

2 Lara ...

3 The school principal ...

4 Adam ...

5 Ziad ...

☐

a moved an old desk.

☐

b visited the library, surprised to see it alive again.

☐

c pulled a thick book from the shelf.

☐

d noticed the fountain in the town square wasn't working.

☐

e found a collection of handwritten letters tied with a ribbon.

3 Read then write the right character:

اقرأ ثم اكتب الشخصية الصحيحة:

1 They cheered when the fountain's water sparkled in the sunlight.

2 The five friends helped him clean the school's storage room.

3 He slid the key into the lock.

4 She exclaimed and held the key up.

**Events of the story****1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The library was old, and gathered on its steps.
a. water b. dust c. people d. stacks
- 2 The travelers' described places Lara has never heard of.
a. letters b. books c. stories d. bags
- 3 The five friends learned about historical events that shaped their
a. city b. country c. village d. town
- 4 With the help of a local, the friends fixed the fountain.
a. teacher b. engineer
c. plumber d. school principal

2 Put the events in the correct order:

ضع الأحداث في الترتيب الصحيح:

- ☐ Inside the dusty library, they found books, maps, letters, and science experiments.
- ☐ They used what they learned to fix the clogged fountain in the town.
- ☒ The friends found the key to the old library while cleaning the school's storage room.
- ☐ The school principal reopened the library with townspeople's help, and the friends became its first volunteers.
- ☐ They noticed the fountain in the town square wasn't working.
- ☐ They started visiting the library every day and learned new things.

**3 Answer the following questions:**

أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1 Where did the story take place?

.....

.....

2 Mention the problems the friends faced in the story.

.....

.....

3 How did they solve the problems?

.....

.....

4 How did the townspeople feel when they saw the fountain working again?

.....

.....

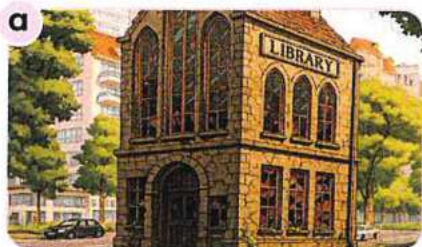
5 What did you learn from the story?

.....

.....

4 Look, then write **TWO (2)** sentences to describe each scene using the word box:

انظر، ثم اكتب جملتين (2) لوصف كل مشهد مستخدماً صندوق الكلمات:



town – library – dust

1

2



work together – repair – volunteers

1

2



Student's Book Activities

هذا الجزء خاص بأنشطة الكتاب المدرسي

1 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 What did the friends find in the school storage room?
 - a. A dusty book
 - b. An old bronze key
 - c. A map of the town
 - d. A windmill
- 2 How did the friends help the town after exploring the library?
 - a. They built a new library.
 - b. They opened a museum.
 - c. They fixed the fountain.
 - d. They cleaned the streets.
- 3 What is the moral of the story?
 - a. Keys are important tools.
 - b. Libraries are only for reading books.
 - c. History is boring.
 - d. Working together and learning can help the community.

2 Write (T) true or (F) false:

اكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

- 1 The library was always open and full of people.
- 2 The children used a map to find treasure.
- 3 The children used what they learned to help the town.
- 4 The school principal thought the library should stay closed.
- 5 The story teaches that knowledge can change lives.

3 Who said these words?

من قال هذه الكلمات؟

- 1 "Look! There's something shiny in the back of the desk."
- 2 "These are from travelers. They describe places I've never heard of."
- 3 "We could actually make some of these."
- 4 "This place is a treasure. It should be open to everyone."
- 5 "Let's ask the townspeople to help, we can all work together to fix it."
- 6 "We thought the key only opened a door, but it actually opened our minds."

Test

on unit (6)

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. There was an old map in the town square. ()
2. The teacher called a local plumber to fix the fountain. ()
3. The fountain's water sparkled in the sunlight again. ()
4. The school principal thanked Kareem and Rana. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. are people who offer to do work or help without being paid.
a. Readers b. Students c. Teachers d. Volunteers
2. The helps water get to the fountain.
a. stack b. pipe c. dust d. shutter
3. If I lose my pen, I will a new one.
a. buy b. bought c. buying d. buys
4. This is the temple I visited last year.
a. whose b. who c. why d. which

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shape – handwritten – experiments – hurt – travelers

The old library in our city is full of knowledge. It holds a collection of ⁽¹⁾ letters describing the places that old ⁽²⁾ visited. It also contains books with diagrams of simple machines and science ⁽³⁾ People can read about plants that can clean water, inventions like the windmill, and important historical events there. Reading many books can ⁽⁴⁾ our minds.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

In a small town, five friends—Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady—discovered a bronze key labeled “Library” while they were cleaning their school’s storage room. The key unlocked the town’s forgotten library, which was filled with dusty books, maps, and letters from old travelers. As they explored its treasures, they learned about science, history, and inventions. Using what they learned, they fixed the town’s broken fountain with help from a plumber. Their efforts inspired the townspeople to restore and reopen the library. At the reopening, the friends knew the key didn’t just open a door. It opened their minds.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about five friends who discovered a
a. school b. room c. key d. square
2. The underlined word “unlocked” means “.....”.
a. closed b. took c. opened d. found

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who are the characters in the story?

.....

4. Where were the friends when they found the key?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

**(C) Writing**

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- (Either) Hala and Fatma exchanged excited looks.
- Dalia used to (writes) letters about her journeys.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- should – The – everyone. – to – open – be – library

.....

- is – markets. – The town – known – its – colorful – for

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

- Adam Lara, Ziad, Hana, and fady helped their teacher.

.....

- how did the children help the town

.....

8 Write a story of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“A day at the library”

- How did you feel?
- What is the moral of the story?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 2

Vocabulary Summary

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move



infrastructure



determination



highway



innovation



extend



goods

Unit 5 Safe and Smart Transportation for Egypt's Future



announcement



passengers



ticket machine



elevator



digital screen



escalator



pay by card



smart doors

Unit 6 The Library That Time Forgot



dust



library



rusty



windmill



pipe



plumber



treasure



fountain



town

Language Summary

Unit 4 Egypt on the Move

Talking about habits in the past

- We use "used to" for things that happened regularly in the past but not now.

Affirmative ✓

Subject + **used to** + base verb ...

Ex: – Students **used to** walk to school.

Negative ✗

Subject + **didn't use to** + base verb ...

Ex: – Dad **didn't** use to have a tablet.

Question ?

Did + subject + **use to** + base verb ...?

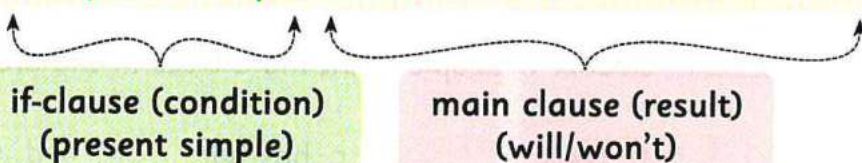
Ex: – Did Maged **use to** play tennis?

Unit 5 Safe and Smart Transportation for Egypt's Future

First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

- We use the First Conditional to talk about possible situations in the future.

If + **present simple**, **will/won't** + base form of the verb ...



Ex: – If you **wake up** early, you **will** arrive on time.

– If Ali **studies** hard, he **won't** fail the test.

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Egypt is improving tourism with new systems. ()
2. The monorail runs on a single track under the ground. ()
3. The stations have escalators but no elevators. ()
4. These modern systems help keep the environment clean. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There were reddish-brown spots all over the gate. It was
 a. dusty b. tall c. rusty d. small
2. Egyptians depend on farming. They grew many different crops.
 a. didn't b. doesn't c. used to d. has
3. The air cleaner if people plant more trees in the area.
 a. will feel b. feels c. has felt d. would feel
4. The sun is one of the main of clean energy.
 a. results b. uses c. looks d. sources

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****renewable – safe – noise – generations – fuel**

In the future, people will travel using smarter and cleaner transportation. Electric buses and trains will use less ⁽¹⁾ and make less ⁽²⁾, helping reduce pollution. Some self-driving cars can move safely with cameras and computers. Many countries now use ⁽³⁾ energy from the sun, wind, and water. If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation, Earth will become cleaner and safer for future ⁽⁴⁾

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One sunny afternoon, a group of friends found an old, rusty key in the town square. Their teacher helped them discover that it opened a door to an old, dusty library that everyone had forgotten for many years. Inside, they found books, maps, and letters filled with the town's history and its people. While reading, they learned how the town's fountain once worked and why it stopped. Using the knowledge from the books, the children repaired the fountain and reopened the library. The mayor and townspeople cheered happily, proud of the smart and caring children.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined verb "repaired" means ".....".
a. fixed b. mixed c. broke d. decorated
2. Fixing the fountain showed that the children were
a. careless b. unkind c. caring d. lazy

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did the friends find in the town square?
.....

4. Who helped them discover the secret of the old key?
.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. If you don't wear shoes, your feet (would) get dirty.
2. Maged (uses) to play on his tablet, but now he plays outside.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. changing – people – the way – Egypt – travel. – is
.....
2. Temple – a magnificent – Luxor – is – complex. – ancient
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. What kind of things does egypt produce today
.....
2. passengers will pay for tickets using smart cards
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Egypt’s new monorail”

(faster – connect)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Egypt has made great progress with new roads, bridges, and tunnels. ()
2. Traveling in Egypt is still slow and difficult. ()
3. Skilled engineers build modern highways. ()
4. The modern highways in Egypt improve everyday life. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a closed machine that goes up or down in a building.
a. escalator b. vehicle c. elevator d. screen
2. You will save money if you by card.
a. paid b. will pay c. pay d. have paid
3. you use to eat out every week?
a. Did b. Do c. Have d. Were
4. The textile industry in Egypt produces high-quality
a. crops b. fabrics c. oils d. foods



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vision – beaches – walkways – luxury – northern

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's newest and most beautiful cities. It is located on the ⁽¹⁾ coast. The city includes a private university, wide green parks, and tall modern buildings. All of these make it truly a city of the future. People enjoy its ⁽²⁾ hotels, sandy beaches, long ⁽³⁾, and lively shopping areas. New Alamein reflects Egypt's ⁽⁴⁾ for progress and a brighter future.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Eco-friendly vehicles like electric buses, trains, and self-driving cars help protect the environment. These vehicles use less fuel, make less noise, and reduce pollution, keeping the air fresh in crowded cities. Self-driving cars may use cameras and computers to move safely, stop at red lights, and avoid accidents. Many countries are now using renewable energy from the sun, wind, and water to power transportation. If everyone chooses eco-friendly travel, we can reduce pollution and make the Earth cleaner and safer for future generations.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text mainly talks about
 a. future transportation b. renewable energy
 b. smart vehicles c. reducing pollution
- The opposite of the underlined adjective "crowded" is ".....".
 a. full b. empty c. clean d. fresh

(B) Answer the following questions:

- How many eco-friendly vehicles are mentioned in the text?

- How do self-driving cars move safely on the road?

- Why does eco-friendly travel help future generations?

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. If Salma (taking) the monorail, she will arrive faster.
2. Did you (using) to play in the park?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. will – make – easier. – also – travel – Technology

.....

2. think – Do – could – library? – the old – you – open – it

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. It was built to honor the god amun

.....

2. how have these projects made travel easier, waleed?

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Egypt’s modern economy”

(develop – industries)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. New Alamein City is designed to be a smart and modern place. ()
2. It looks like a historical city. ()
3. Omar enjoys the mountains along the sandy beaches in New Alamein City. ()
4. New Alamein is a real home for many people. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People to depend on smartphones like they do now.
 a. are using b. didn't use c. use d. uses
2. Noha will enjoy the trip if the weather sunny.
 a. stays b. stayed c. stay d. is staying
3. Can you please bring the boxes from the room?
 a. storage b. garden c. kitchen d. bathroom
4. The stood in line waiting to buy train tickets.
 a. animals b. creatures c. passengers d. trees



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

carry – self-driving – pollution – eco-friendly – crowded

There are many new vehicles. I think they all are ⁽¹⁾ transportation, and this helps the world be a cleaner and safer place. For example, ⁽²⁾ cars may help people travel more safely. In the future, I think there will be different new vehicles. They will be more modern and smarter. I think there will be flying taxis. They will ⁽³⁾ people quickly above the ⁽⁴⁾ streets.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt has developed many smart, modern cities in recent years. One of these cities is the New Administrative Capital. It is in the east of Cairo. It helps reduce crowding in Cairo. It has an airport and important government offices. The city is **eco-friendly**. It has lovely parks everywhere. It also uses modern technology to manage everything such as roads, water, and energy. It has the Iconic Tower, the tallest tower in Africa. People in the New Administrative Capital can find different great jobs. They also enjoy a peaceful life there.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about Egypt's new
 a. city b. building c. office d. airport
- The underlined word "**eco-friendly**" means "not to the environment".
 a. fine b. harmful c. good d. helpful

(B) Answer the following questions:

- Where is the New Administrative Capital located?

- How does the New Administrative Capital help Cairo?

- What can people find in the city?

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Did Hana use to (swims) in the sea?
2. If I study hard, I (won't) pass the exam.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. narrow – Roads – in – past. – the – were
.....
2. can – passengers – the monorail – at – stations? – find – What
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. The giza metro is faster better, and cleaner
.....
2. how are new projects good for Egypt
.....

8 Write an informal email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

- Your name is Adam and your email address is (adam@yahoo.com). Your friend's name is Maged and his email address is (maged@gmail.com).

"Egypt in the past and today"

(farming – textile factories)

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

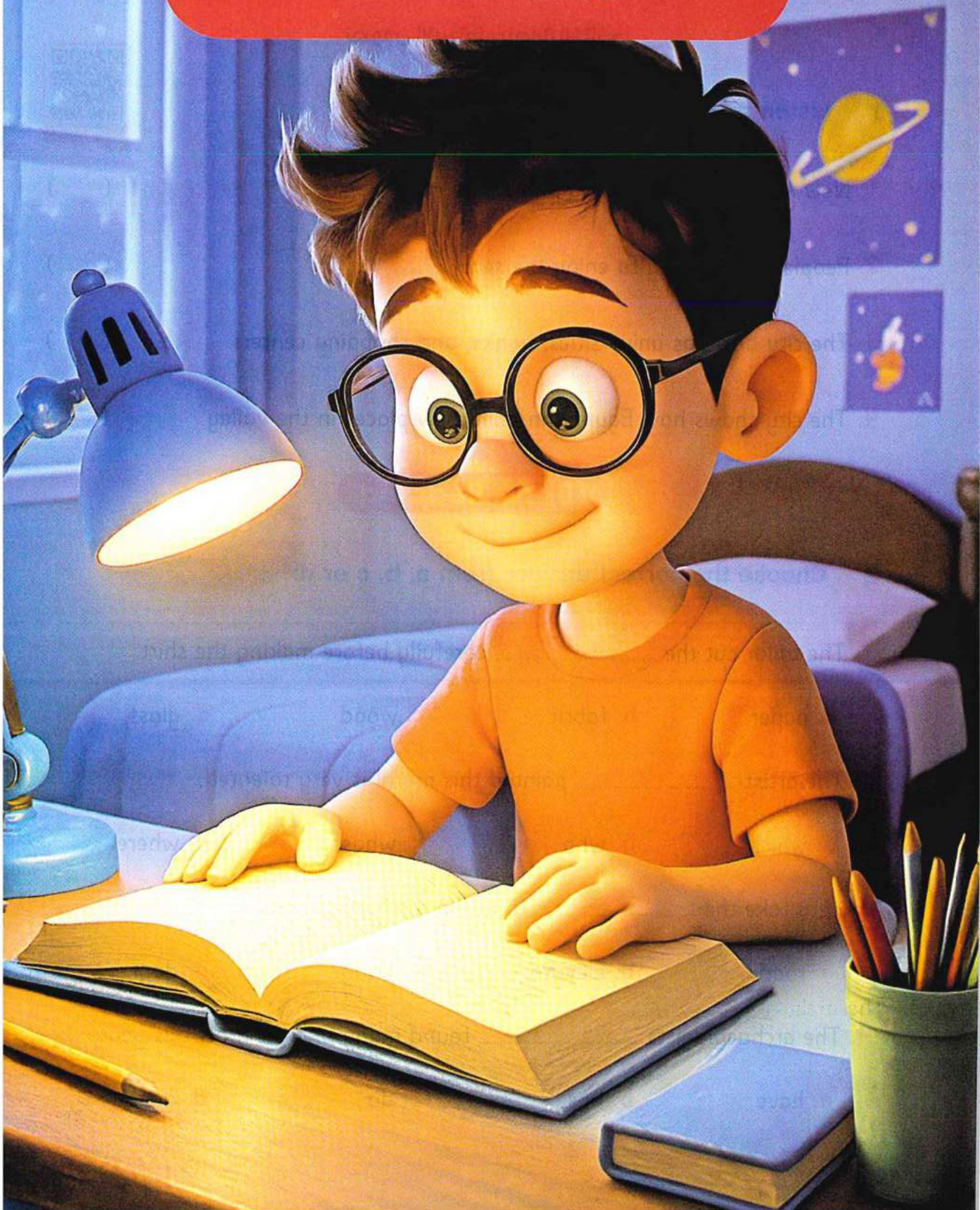
.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Tests



Test

1

(A) Listening

نصوص الاستماع بنهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. New Alamein City is on Egypt's western coast. ()
2. People visit the city to enjoy the sea. ()
3. The city also has universities, banks, and shopping centers. ()
4. The city shows how Egypt can build new places in the valley. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tailor cut the carefully before making the shirt.
a. paper b. fabric c. wood d. glass
2. The artist painted this mural is very talented.
a. which b. who c. whose d. where
3. Let's take the to go up to the fifth floor.
a. road b. elevator c. bridge d. door
4. The archaeologists found many ancient tools this year.
a. have b. has c. do d. does

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****visitors – moved – monument – sunlight – emperors**

The Temple of Dakka is in Nubia near Egypt's southern border. This ancient ⁽¹⁾ has become a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history. The rulers designed it for Thoth, the god of wisdom. Later, Greek and Roman ⁽²⁾ added new walls. When the High Dam raised the water level, experts ⁽³⁾ the temple. Today, ⁽⁴⁾ walk through its gates and see the beautiful carvings.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sara has loved art since she was a child. One day, her school organized a trip to a famous art center. When they arrived, she saw young artists working on their canvases. Some were painting with bright colors using paintbrushes and palettes. Others were shaping pottery or carving wood to make amazing sculptures. Sara stopped to watch an artist finishing a huge clay statue — it looked like a masterpiece! Later, she joined a short workshop where she painted her own picture. She felt proud of her work and dreamed of having her own exhibition one day.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "palettes" means flat boards artists use to mix

- a. shapes b. animals c. plants d. colors

2. Sara felt of her own picture.

- a. scared b. full c. proud d. afraid

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Sara go on her school trip?

4. What were the young artists doing?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

**(C) Writing****5** Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The dog (who) is barking belongs to my neighbor.
2. If you (helped) me, I will finish the project faster.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. stepped – The friends – full – a room – into – shelves. – of

.....

2. and – halls – The museum – has – galleries. – many

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Is luxor Temple a magnificent ancient complex

.....

2. one day, hana noticed the fountain.

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:**“The power of Aswan Dam”**

(huge structure – supply of electricity)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

2

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient place near Minya. ()
2. Tuna el-Gebel has tombs, temples, and skeletons. ()
3. Visitors can walk in the desert and see the city of Petosiris. ()
4. The area is quiet and full of art. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The artist is neither drawing painting today; he is taking a break.
a. or b. nor c. and d. both
2. Scientists always try to old machines to make them work better.
a. break b. hide c. improve d. stop
3. A is a structure that sends water up into the air.
a. library b. creak c. windmill d. fountain
4. If you study hard, you get good grades.
a. will b. would c. could d. are

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****comfortably – smart cards – crowded – renewable – pollution**

In the future, Egypt will have modern transportation with new technology. Trains and buses will move fast and safely across the country. They will use ⁽¹⁾ energy to keep the air clean. Passengers will pay for tickets with ⁽²⁾ and wait at clean stations. These plans will reduce ⁽³⁾ and help the environment. Traveling will be easier and roads will be less ⁽⁴⁾ for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Youssef's uncle is an engineer who works in construction. Every morning, he drives along new highways and bridges that his team helped build. He tells Youssef stories about how these projects are improving Egypt's infrastructure. Youssef listens proudly as his uncle explains how new roads make travel faster and trade easier. One day, Youssef visited the site and saw machines and workers building a tunnel. He was amazed by their hard work and innovation. His uncle said, "Every bridge we build strengthens our country." Youssef felt inspired by his uncle's commitment to Egypt's progress.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to
 a. Youssef b. Youssef's uncle c. the team d. trade
- Youssef felt by his uncle's commitment to Egypt's progress.
 a. tired b. sad c. surprised d. inspired

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the general idea of the text?

- What does Youssef's uncle do every morning?

- How do construction projects help improve Egypt?

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. We (not used to) have a computer at home when I was younger.
2. The test was (fair) because only some students got extra time.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. anything – Have – archaeologists – recently? – discovered – interesting
.....
2. had – wish – paintbrush. – I – my – I
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. how do the wheels of the robot move
.....
2. Wadi El-hitan is not just a place of science
.....

8 Write an informal email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

- Your name is Sherif and your email address is (sherif@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Nader and his email address is (nader@gmail.com).

“A visit to an art exhibition”

- When did you go? – What did you see there?

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

3

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The monorail connects important places quickly. ()
2. Passengers find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. ()
3. Some stations have elevators and tunnels. ()
4. People can stay safe if they run or sit early during the trip. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather to walk many kilometers to school every day.
a. used b. uses c. using d. use
2. The car engine is broken must be repaired soon.
a. whose b. who c. which d. that
3. Visitors can walk along the desert to see old fossils.
a. doors b. chairs c. trails d. walls
4. The artist a giant wooden statue.
a. whispered b. carved c. mixed d. talked

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****inventor – workshop – measure – accurately – pendulum**

Many years ago, people didn't have clocks, so they used the sun to tell the time. Later, some inventors built the first clock with gears and a ⁽¹⁾, which moved from side to side to help the clock work more ⁽²⁾ Then, an engineer worked in his ⁽³⁾ to design a new clock. His clock could ⁽⁴⁾ every second. It became one of the greatest inventions that changed people's lives.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One rainy morning, Salma and her friends were walking home when they saw an old sign that said "Reading Club". The small building looked empty, with broken windows and dusty walls. Inside, they found boxes full of torn books and old photos of the town's library from long ago. Salma picked up a picture showing children reading happily. "Let's make this place alive again!" she said. The friends cleaned the room, repaired the shelves and painted the walls bright blue. When they finished, the people in the town came to read again. Everyone thanked the children for bringing knowledge back to life.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about Salma and her friends an old library.
a. working b. reading c. writing d. restoring
2. The opposite of the underlined word "alive" is ".....".
a. dead b. quiet c. busy d. crowded

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did Salma and her friends find inside the building?

.....

4. What did Salma say when she saw the picture?

.....

5. How does the story show teamwork?

.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The government will (wide) the road next month.
2. My dad has (repair) the washing machine this morning.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. become – self-reliant – has – and industrial. – more – Egypt
.....
2. the environment – will be – electric buses, – cleaner. – we – If – use
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. The aswan Dam is a huge structure
.....
2. what can people do to stop air pollution
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Egypt in the past and now”
(worked in fields – new industries)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

4

(A) Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



1. One of the best ancient Egyptian books is the loom. ()
2. The loom helped the ancient Egyptians make fabrics from linen. ()
3. The workers worked hard to assemble the wooden pieces of the loom. ()
4. This Egyptian invention still inspires traditional machines. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An studies ancient places and old objects.
a. archaeologist b. mummy c. doctor d. artist
2. Mahmoud Mokhtar made a/an statue. He was truly talented.
a. tasty b. quiet c. incredible d. lazy
3. Inside the museum, you can see ancient statues and modern paintings.
a. neither b. both c. either d. none
4. The workers have the broken statues in the museum.
a. repaired b. repairs c. repairing d. repair

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****narrow – remarkable – projects – highways – determination**

I live in Cairo, Egypt. I'm proud of my country because it has made ⁽¹⁾ progress in recent years. This progress has come through many infrastructure ⁽²⁾ One of these projects is the roads network. The roads used to be ⁽³⁾ and crowded, but now there are modern highways, bridges, and tunnels. These new ⁽⁴⁾ help connect different parts of the country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Mark. Yesterday, I read a book about Tuna el-Gebel. It's a fascinating place that amazed archaeologists. Archaeologists discovered underground **chambers** and long corridors decorated with art and carvings. They even found hundreds of animal mummies, especially preserved birds. At the heart of the site stands the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest from over two thousand years ago. His tomb shows both Egyptian and Greek styles in its colorful scenes. Walking through Tuna el-Gebel feels like traveling back in time. These ancient burial chambers and mummies make Egyptians proud of their rich and beautiful history.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. were amazed by Tuna el-Gebel.
 - a. Teachers
 - b. Librarians
 - c. Engineers
 - d. Archaeologists
2. The underlined word "**chambers**" means "special inside a tomb".
 - a. rooms
 - b. objects
 - c. secrets
 - d. stones

(B) Answer the following questions:

What is the main idea of the text?

.....

Who was Petosiris?

.....

What kind of mummies did the archaeologists find?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. If it (rain), I will take an umbrella.
2. I (use to) play football when I was little.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. gadget? – Can – this – you – about – tell – me
.....
2. tell – sand – Long ago, – used – the time. – people – to
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly
.....
2. did you see the incredible mural they created
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“The new monorail”

(connect – quickly)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

5

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Amina visited the Grand Egyptian Museum with her school. ()
2. Amina's favorite thing was the golden clothes of King Tutankhamun. ()
3. They watched movies and joined a class. ()
4. They had dinner in the museum's garden café. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They studied with to pass the exams.
a. fear b. laziness c. determination d. weakness
2. The fixed the clogged pipes.
a. plumber b. pilot c. soldier d. fisherman
3. If the weather nice tomorrow, we will go to the park.
a. was b. were c. is d. are
4. This is the device helps students learn faster.
a. who b. which c. whose d. where

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****environment – renewable – fuel – healthy – electric**

My name is Hassan. I live in a smart and clean city. People here care about the ⁽¹⁾ and never harm it. I drive an electric car that doesn't make noise and keeps the air fresh for everyone. People who don't have cars use ⁽²⁾ buses or trains. Our city uses ⁽³⁾ energy from the sun, wind, and water. We all work together to keep our city green and ⁽⁴⁾

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Kareem, and I work in a large factory in Mahalla. Every day, I help produce clothes that are sent to shops all over Egypt and even to other countries. Our machines are fast and modern, and we use clean energy from the sun to power them. My job isn't always easy, but I feel proud because my work helps Egypt grow. In the past, people in my village worked only on farms, but now many of us work in factories. Egypt is changing and becoming stronger. I'm happy to be part of this progress and development.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem works in a large in Mahalla.
a. school b. museum c. exhibition d. factory
2. The underlined word "modern" means
a. new b. old c. boring d. incredible

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of energy does the factory use?
.....

4. Why does Kareem feel happy?
.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The runner (which) crosses the line first wins the race.
2. I (didn't) seen her for two weeks.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. sculpture – amazing. – The – was – saw – we

.....

2. structure – The – a huge – Egypt. – Aswan Dam – is – in

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. how did the pendulum move

.....

2. Welcome to the cairo Metro

.....

8 Write a story of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Your favorite famous place”

(city – built)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

6

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The class visited the Temple of Dakka on a school trip. ()
2. They were amazed by the tall golden walls. ()
3. The temple was moved to protect it from fire. ()
4. Egyptians worked hard to keep their history alive. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Schools didn't use to tablets or smart boards in the past.
a. had b. having c. have d. has
2. The painting is a/an It's made with great skill.
a. masterpiece b. invention c. disaster d. mistake
3. A/An is an electric device for showing words or pictures.
a. elevator b. escalator
c. pendulum d. digital screen
4. Scientists haven't the hidden chamber yet.
a. discovering b. discover c. discovers d. discovered

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****inspire – threads – creativity – footprint – blueprint**

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians invented the loom, which helped them make clothes, blankets, and fabrics from linen. Skilled workers and engineers drew a ⁽¹⁾ and assembled the wooden parts to ensure the loom worked well. To build fabric, people moved ⁽²⁾ up and down, creating fine, colorful cloth that reflected Egyptian ⁽³⁾ Today, this invention continues to ⁽⁴⁾ modern textile machines that produce our clothes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Anna visited New Alamein City. She was amazed by its beauty. The blue Mediterranean Sea and golden beaches looked perfect together. She walked along the beautiful walkways lined with palm trees and enjoyed the clean, fresh air. The tall towers and shiny glass buildings made the city look so modern. At night, the lights reflected on the water, creating a magical view. She stayed in a hotel near the beach and watched the sunrise every morning. New Alamein is not only beautiful but also peaceful and safe. It's one of the most wonderful places she has ever seen in Egypt.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word “magical” means “.....”.

- a. amazing b. modern c. annoying d. boring

2. The walkways were lined with

- a. grass b. apple trees c. palm trees d. flowers

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the general idea of the text?

.....

4. What made the city look modern and shiny?

.....

5. Why does Anna think New Alamein is a wonderful place?

.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. You need either water (and) milk to make the recipe.
2. If my friends come early, we (would) play football.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. found – They – a collection – letters. – handwritten – of

.....

2. to – Artists – palettes – their – colors. – mix – use

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. you can see the fossils lying there

.....

2. What did Ancient Egyptians create

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Industry in Egypt”

(textile – products)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

7

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Long ago, people used the moon and stars to tell the time. ()
2. Later, clever inventors built the first clock with gadgets and pendulums. ()
3. One officer designed a clock that measured every second. ()
4. His clock became famous across Africa. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. energy comes from natural sources like the sun, wind, and water.
a. Non-renewable b. Renewable c. Polluted d. Fossil
2. You can choose a clay model or a colorful painting for your project.
a. both b. either c. neither d. none
3. If the bus arrives on time, we will school early.
a. reaching b. reaches c. reach d. reached
4. How ancient Egyptians preserved mummies is still a
a. mystery b. scene c. rule d. level

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

ocean – scientific – normal – whales – heritage

Wadi El-Hitan is one of the most fascinating places in Egypt's Western Desert. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a big ⁽¹⁾ Here, we discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient ⁽²⁾, some longer than 15 meters. These skeletons tell the story of how whales changed over time. It is truly a world ⁽³⁾ site with great ⁽⁴⁾ importance.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Rania. I'm from Egypt, and I often travel in Cairo. The new monorail and electric buses have made my trips easier. The monorail moves quickly on a single track above the ground, and I can buy my ticket from a ticket machine at the station. There are announcements, screens, and even elevators. The electric bus is quiet and clean because it runs on electricity. Passengers can pay by card or phone. I always remember to stand or sit properly and not block the smart doors. Egypt is really changing travel for everyone. It feels safe and smart.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rania often travels in
a. Alexandria b. Luxor c. Aswan d. Cairo
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a. electric bus b. monorail
c. station d. ticket machine

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the text talk about?

.....

4. What can passengers find at the monorail station?

.....

5. What does Rania always remember to do while traveling?

.....

(C) Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Did Amr (uses) to play video games online?
2. The story (then) he wrote was incredible.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. has – industries. – Egypt – many – developed – new
.....
2. from – stand – doors. – Please – back – the
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. is there a photograph inside the frame
.....
2. let's ask the townspeople to help us
.....

8 Write an informal email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

Your name is Hana and your email address is (hana@gmail.com). Your friend's name is Sara and her email address is (sara@gmail.com).

"Your vision for Egypt's future transportation"

(hope – easier)

From :

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

8

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Omar visited a temple with his classmates. ()
2. He saw colorful pottery and tiny paintings. ()
3. The guide explained how artists carved the wooden statue. ()
4. Omar felt inspired to make his own masterpiece. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The earthquake has badly damaged the city's
a. infrastructure b. planning c. blueprint d. fabric
2. children use to play outside more often?
a. Do b. Doing c. Did d. Does
3. The connects many cities together.
a. highway b. walkway c. garden d. playground
4. The movie we watched yesterday was exciting.
a. who b. whose c. that d. when

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

lies – innovation – palm trees – buildings – lays

Farouk lives in a beautiful coastal city, New Alamein. It ⁽¹⁾ on the northern coast of Egypt. His home is surrounded by modern glass ⁽²⁾ Every morning, he rides his bike along the wide roads filled with ⁽³⁾ From his window, he can see the blue water of the sea. The city combines beauty, nature, and ⁽⁴⁾, making it a true tourist spot.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptians were very smart inventors. They used the loom for making fabrics from linen. Thousands of years ago, a skilled engineer drew a blueprint to know every detail about the new tool and how to assemble the wooden parts of it. To make a fine piece of cloth, people were moving threads up and down. This process needed patience and skill. This invention helped them make clothes, blankets, and fabrics. The loom showed the Egyptians' creativity and became one of the most important tools in history.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is mainly about the invention of the
 a. car b. metro c. clock d. loom
- People were moving up and down the loom.
 a. threads b. wheels c. pendulums d. fabrics

(B) Answer the following questions:

- What did ancient Egyptians use the loom for?

- What were the old looms mainly made of?

- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Mom and Dad always (courage) me to do better.
2. Ahmed, (which) shirt is blue, won the prize.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. made – Mahmoud Mokhtar – statue – big – Nahdit Masr. – a – called
.....
2. inventions. – The clock – one – the most – was – fascinating – of
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. Did ziad ask someone to look at the maps
.....
2. egypt will have faster cleaner, and smarter ways to travel.
.....

8 Write a story of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“A day at Tuna el-Gebel”

(mummies – burial)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

9

(A) Listening



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Rania is a talented tour guide. ()
2. She decided to make a video game. ()
3. To create her invention, Rania first designed a blueprint. ()
4. Rania continued to find new ways to weaken her invention. ()

(B) Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A is someone who is traveling on a vehicle but not working on it.
a. passenger b. driver c. pilot d. captain
2. A is a machine with blades that turn in the wind to make power or pump water.
a. sink b. stack c. computer d. windmill
3. If you don't hurry, you miss the monorail.
a. will b. would c. could d. should
4. the team completed the restoration plan?
a. Have b. Has c. Having d. Had

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:****colors – displayed – artwork – pottery – canvas**

Omar is a talented boy who loves art. One day, he decided to make a painting that would fit into his special frame. He picked up his paintbrush and palette and spent hours on a ⁽¹⁾ _____, drawing and painting. The ⁽²⁾ _____ he chose were bright, making his ⁽³⁾ _____ look almost alive. When he ⁽⁴⁾ _____ it at the school gallery, people admired his talent, imagination, and creativity.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

In southern Egypt, particularly in Aswan, the great High Dam stands as a symbol of innovation, planning, and hard work. Skilled engineers built it to control the floods from the Nile and to produce clean electricity for cities, villages, and factories across the country. It stores water for farmers and helps them grow crops every season, even when there is little rain or **drought**. It also protects the nearby villages when there are dangerous floods. Thanks to this amazing important project, Egypt continues to grow and build a brighter future.

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**drought**" is "_____".
a. storm b. earthquake c. flood d. lightning
2. The High Dam produces clean _____.
a. electricity b. water c. light d. air

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why was the High Dam built?
.....

4. How does the High Dam help farmers?
.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

**(C) Writing****5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Egypt (does) greatly developed in recent years.
2. Amira (haven't) use to ride a bike.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. vehicles – make – Electric – fuel – noise. – use – less – and – less

.....

2. shiny – the back – There's – in – something – the desk. – of

.....

7 Punctuate the following:

1. New alamein is a new home for many egyptians.

.....

2. was the sculpture absolutely incredible

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The Temple of Dakka"

(carvings – Nubia)

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

faster – bus – cash – paid – ticket – metro

Asma : How did you come here?

Hamsa : I took the ⁽¹⁾

Asma : Metro! Why didn't you come by bus?

Hamsa : The metro is ⁽²⁾ and cleaner.

Asma : How did you pay for the ⁽³⁾

Hamsa : I ⁽⁴⁾ by card. You can also pay by phone or in ⁽⁵⁾

(B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- If you study hard, you will (passing) the exam.
- She knows the person (whose) made this frame.
- You can find both modern (nor) old pieces of art.
- (Do) students use to borrow books from the library?
- She hasn't (visit) the Temple of Dakka.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- To is to put parts together to make a whole.
a. draw b. assemble c. fix d. measure
- People visit to see ancient treasures and statues.
a. schools b. stations c. clubs d. museums
- The bridges are made of strong to hold heavy vehicles.
a. plastic b. wood c. concrete d. glass
- Tourists took photos beside the giant stone in the temple.
a. rivers b. columns c. hieroglyphics d. balloons



5. You can get tickets from the ticket at stations.
a. machines b. elevators c. escalators d. announcements
6. You can buy a phone or a tablet.
a. both b. either c. neither d. so
7. This is the house roof was damaged in the storm.
a. who b. whose c. which d. that
8. They grown many crops.
a. have b. has c. is d. was
9. Children didn't use to in the streets.
a. playing b. plays c. played d. play
10. The math problem was difficult but our teacher it.
a. simpleness b. simple c. simplified d. simply

(C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

1. canvas – paintbrush – palette – monorail (.....)
2. Who – What – Told – Which (.....)
3. driver – water – sun – wind (.....)
4. bus – metro – monorail – fabric (.....)
5. accurate – improve – fascinating – famous (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Mia went to the museum with her class to learn about ancient Egypt. Inside, they saw beautiful halls and galleries filled with treasures and statues. Mia was amazed when she saw the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts. She also watched a short video that showed how the ancient Egyptians built temples. Later, Mia joined a workshop where she made her own small clay statue. After the visit, she and her friends enjoyed food in the garden café. When she got home, she told her parents about this amazing visit and what she learned there.

**(A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:**

1. Mia went to the temple with her class. ()
2. She saw the golden mask of King Tutankhamun. ()
3. She and her friends enjoyed food in the garden café. ()

(B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined word "artifacts" means
a. valuable old objects b. tall buildings
c. kinds of food d. modern machines
5. Mia made a small clay in the workshop.
a. mask b. statue c. ring d. painting

(D) Writing**6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences:****"Wonderful inventions"**

(loom – clothes – threads – clock – gears)

Listening Scripts

Lesson (1) Practice

Unit (1)

Page 15

Lara is a young artist who visited an art gallery with her family last weekend. She saw huge paintings and wished she had brought her paintbrush and palette. They walked into a room and saw beautiful pottery, a wooden statue, a colorful sculpture, and a bright mural. Her mother showed her an old masterpiece. Lara felt inspired by everything she saw and was excited to return home and create her own painting.

Unit (2)

Page 51

Adel is a talented student who joins a science competition at his school. He creates a smart bottle that keeps drinks cool and reminds people to stay healthy. First, Adel designs a clear and detailed blueprint. Then, he carefully uses his tools to connect tiny wires and sensors inside the bottle. The smart bottle even lights up when it is time for the user to drink water.

Unit (3)

Page 86

Ancient Egyptians built many burial sites. They built many of them in the deserts. A burial site often has underground chambers and long corridors. It also has tombs of ancient priests. These tombs have mummies of preserved animals and birds. They are also filled with fascinating treasures. The tombs' walls are usually covered with amazing and colorful carvings. Also, they have different scenes. The burial sites and mummies make Egyptians proud of their country's rich history.

Unit (4)

Page 138

My name is Gamal. I live in Aswan. I'm a truck driver. I transport different goods across Egypt, so I travel between cities every week. Over the years, I've seen great changes in our country. The new highways, bridges, and tunnels connect places better. They are making travel faster and safer. These projects make my work easier. Now, I can save more time and deliver more goods in shorter time.

Unit (5)

Page 172

Egypt's new Sphinx International Airport makes travel faster and easier. It has smart systems for easy check-in. It also has smart doors that open and close automatically. Ticket machines help save time. The airport uses solar power and LED lights to reduce pollution. It has big digital screens, too. With its advanced design and clean energy, the Sphinx Airport shows Egypt's step towards a greener future.

Unit Tests

Unit (1)

Page 41

I'm Amira. I'm a young artist who loves drawing, painting, and carving. Last week, I went to an art exhibition in my city. I saw beautiful pottery, colorful sculptures, and giant wooden statues. The exhibition was full of creativity and amazing ideas. It inspired me to go home and start working on a new art project. I liked the beautiful pottery, so I thought about making a colorful clay vase.

**Unit (2)****Page 76**

Youssef made a talking backpack that helps students stay organized during the school day. First, Youssef designed the backpack's layout on his tablet, planning where each part should go. Then, he assembled the small parts using tools. When a student forgets something, the backpack reminds them using voice messages. It also has a solar panel that charges the speaker. His invention helps students remember their books and keeps learning fun and smart.

Unit (3)**Page 115**

Wadi El-Hitan is a quiet place in the desert near Al-Fayoum. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a big ocean. Archaeologists found bones of old whales in the sand there. The bones are very big and show how whales lived long ago. Many tourists visit the place to take photos and learn about the past. It is now a protected natural area in Egypt.

Unit (4)**Page 162**

Egypt showed strong commitment to improving the well-being of its people. In the past, traffic in many cities was slow and heavy. The crowded roads made it difficult to transport people and goods. Thanks to skilled engineers, workers, and modern planning, Egypt has extended its roads and built new highways, bridges, and tunnels. Today, traveling and transporting goods are easier and more organized. All these changes make Egypt a stronger nation.

Unit (5)**Page 199**

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Electric buses, trains, and self-driving cars will help reduce pollution and keep cities safe. Many countries will use renewable energy from the sun, wind, and water to power their transportation. It never runs out, and it's better for the planet. If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation, Earth will stay clean and healthy for future generations.

Unit (6)**Page 223**

There was an old fountain in the town square. It was clogged. Kareem and Rana figured out the problem using a guide from the library. They decided to solve the problem. They told their teacher about the fountain. The teacher called a local plumber to fix it. When the fountain's water sparkled in the sunlight again, the townspeople cheered. The school principal thanked the teacher and honored Kareem and Rana.

Reviews (1&2)**Review (I) – Test (I)****Page 124**

The Temple of Dakka is in Nubia near Egypt's southern border. Many rulers designed temples to worship gods like Thoth, the god of wisdom. Greek and Roman emperors also added new walls and carvings showing respect for Egypt's traditions. In the past, the temple stood close to the River Nile. But when the High Dam raised the water level, Egyptian experts worked carefully to move every stone to higher ground.


Review (1) – Test (2) Page 127

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a truly talented Egyptian artist. He created the famous Nahdit Masr statue. It shows a woman and a sphinx. The statue shows Egypt's great history and the hard work of its people. He also made many other sculptures and artworks which were collected later in a museum in Cairo after he died. The museum also includes his tomb. His art continues to inspire many people today.

Review (1) – Test (3) Page 130

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt. It was built by engineers to stop the Nile from flooding in order to protect the villages that are near the river. It also helps generate powerful energy for homes and factories. It is made of stone and concrete. Farmers use the water that the dam keeps to grow crops all year. The Aswan Dam is one of the great modern buildings.

Review (2) – Test (1) Page 228

Egypt is improving transportation with new systems in Cairo and Giza. One of these systems is the monorail, which runs on a single track above the ground and connects important places quickly. The stations have ticket machines, digital screens, escalators, and elevators. The country also introduces electric buses. They use clean energy and produce no smoke. These modern systems help keep the environment clean and make travel safer and faster.

Review (2) – Test (2) Page 231

Egypt has made great progress with new roads, bridges, and tunnels. In the past, traveling used to be slow and difficult as the roads were narrow and crowded. Today people can move and transport goods more easily. Skilled engineers build modern highways that connect different cities and improve everyday life. These projects improve Egypt's economy and show its determination to make progress and provide a better future for its people.

Review (2) – Test (3) Page 234

I'm Omar. When I visited New Alamein City, I learned that it is designed to be a smart and modern place. The tall glass buildings and wide roads make it look like a city of the future. I enjoyed seeing the peaceful beaches and the beautiful walkways with palm trees. The city is not only for tourists. It has universities and shopping centers that make it a real home for many people.

Final Tests
Test (1) Page 238

New Alamein City is a modern city on Egypt's northern coast. It has wide roads, tall buildings, and clean beaches. Many people visit it to enjoy the sea and stay in nice hotels. The city is active during the summer, with many events and festivals. The city also has universities, green parks, and shopping



centers. It shows how Egypt can build new places in the desert that are full of life and beauty.

Test (2)**Page 241**

Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient place near Minya. It has tombs, chambers, and mummies that show Egypt's great history and culture. Long ago, people made beautiful carvings and colorful art on the tombs. The carvings on the walls were carefully made by skilled ancient artists. Visitors can walk in the desert and see the tomb of Petosiris. The area is quiet and full of art. It helps Egyptians feel proud of their ancient history.

Test (3)**Page 244**

Egypt is changing the way people travel. The transportation system is becoming more organized with clear signs and announcements. The monorail connects important places quickly. At each station, passengers find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. Some stations have elevators and escalators, so people travel more easily. Passengers must buy a ticket and listen to announcements. They mustn't block the smart doors. People can stay safe if they stand or sit properly during the trip.

Test (4)**Page 247**

The ancient Egyptians invented many amazing things that we still benefit from today. One of the best inventions is the loom. The loom helped them make clothes, blankets, and fabrics from linen. The workers worked hard to assemble the wooden pieces of the loom carefully. Only

skilled workers knew how to plan the loom correctly. The Egyptian loom made fine, colorful cloth. This Egyptian invention still inspires modern machines that make our clothes today.

Test (5)**Page 250**

My name is Amina. I visited the Grand Egyptian Museum last weekend with my school. The new museum is full of amazing things. We saw ancient treasures and statues. My favorite thing was the golden mask of King Tutankhamun. We watched videos and joined a workshop to learn about how the ancient Egyptian temples were built. We had lunch in the museum's garden café. We talked about what we saw and took photos.

Test (6)**Page 253**

Last month, my class visited the Temple of Dakka on a school trip. It has stood for thousands of years in Nubia. We were amazed by the tall stone walls and the drawings of ancient gods. Our teacher told us that the temple was moved to protect it from water. This ancient monument has become a symbol of Egypt's history. I felt proud to see how Egyptians worked hard to keep their history alive.

Test (7)**Page 256**

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. Later, clever inventors built the first clock with gears and pendulums, which kept time more accurately. One engineer, who studied how things move, designed a clock that could measure every second in a workshop full of tools and gears. His innovative clock was one of the most



fascinating inventions and became famous across Europe. It changed the way people lived and worked daily.

Test (8)

Page 259

Omar was a curious boy who loved making things with his hands. One weekend, Omar visited an art gallery with his classmates. He saw bright, amazing sculptures. He also saw colorful pottery, and magnificent paintings on a canvas. A guide showed them a tall wooden statue and explained how artists carved it. He even saw a huge, bright mural on the wall. Omar felt inspired to create his own masterpiece at home.

Test (9)

Page 262

Rania is a talented engineer who loves creating new things. One day, she decided to make a gadget powered by solar energy for cleaning gardens. To create her invention, Rania first designed a detailed blueprint and then used tools to assemble each part. When she placed it in the sun, it worked efficiently. Rania was proud of her invention and continued to find new ways to improve it and explore new ideas.